

 hugo

# NORWEGIAN

## in THREE MONTHS

YOUR ESSENTIAL GUIDE TO UNDERSTANDING  
AND SPEAKING NORWEGIAN – FAST!

Hugo's world-renowned method is designed  
to give you a full working knowledge of Norwegian  
in double-quick time


- Essential grammar is simply explained
- Model sentences, key phrases and word lists build up your vocabulary
- Short exercises based on real-life scenarios reinforce what you've learnt
- Conversation drills help you practise your speaking skills
- Pronunciation is made easy with Hugo's unique "imitated pronunciation" system, which represents Norwegian sounds with English syllables
- Includes a mini bilingual dictionary



Make learning even easier and more fun – ask your bookseller  
for Hugo's *Norwegian in Three Months* Cassette Course, which  
comes with four audio cassettes as well as this book



DORLING KINDERSLEY

 [www.dk.com](http://www.dk.com)

ISBN 0-85285-343-2



9 780852 853436 >

£5.95

 hugo

# NORWEGIAN

## in THREE MONTHS



Hugo's Simplified System

# Norwegian in Three Months

Øivind Blom

Hugo's Language Books

[www.dk.com](http://www.dk.com)



A DORLING KINDERSLEY BOOK

www.dk.com

This new and enlarged edition published in Great Britain in 1998 by Hugo's Language Books, an imprint of Dorling Kindersley Limited, 9 Henrietta Street, London WC2E 8PS

Copyright 1998, 1999 © Dorling Kindersley Ltd  
2 4 6 8 10 9 7 5 3

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the prior written permission of the copyright owner.

A CIP catalogue record is available from the British Library.

ISBN 0 85285 343 2

*Norwegian in Three Months* is also available in a pack with four cassettes, ISBN 0 85285 344 0

Written by

Øivind Blom MA (Oslo)

Set in 10/12pt Palatino by  
Paul Williams @ Spirit Level  
Printed and bound by LegoPrint, Italy

## Preface

This new and enlarged edition of the Hugo course *Norwegian in Three Months* is designed for people who want to acquire a good working knowledge of the language in a short time, and who will probably be working at home without a teacher. The *Three Months* series as a whole is renowned for its success in self-tuition, with some titles proving to be equally useful in supporting teacher-led classes; this book is no exception. It provides a complete course in written and conversational Norwegian.

The author, Øivind Blom, has had many years' experience in teaching his native language, both in school and via correspondence courses, and in the preparation of self-tuition texts. He was also a co-editor of a 3-volume study of Norwegian, *Our Own Language*, published in 1987 by H. Aschehoug & Co. in Oslo.

The book begins with an explanation of Norwegian pronunciation, as far as this is possible in print. If you are working without a teacher, you will find that our system of 'imitated pronunciation' simplifies matters considerably. Using this book together with the related audio cassettes which we have produced as optional extras will add another dimension to your studies. Ask your bookseller for Hugo's *Norwegian in Three Months Cassette Course*.

It has always been a principle of the Hugo method to teach only what is really essential. We assume that the student wants to learn Norwegian from a practical angle; the chapters contain those rules of grammar that will be of most help in this respect. Constructions are clearly explained, and the order in which everything is presented takes into consideration the need for rapid progress. Each chapter includes plenty of exercises, and the vocabulary used is both practical and up-to-date (see the Introduction for notes concerning

modern Norwegian). Often, in addition to testing a grammatical point, an exercise will cover a particular topic, for example: Exercise 34 weather, Exercise 39 booking a hotel room, Exercise 54 holidays. The conversational drills which round off each chapter introduce colloquial and idiomatic turns of speech as well as constructions already explained.

Ideally, you should spend about an hour a day on your work (slightly less, maybe, if you do not use the audio cassettes), although there is no hard and fast rule on this. Do as much as you feel capable of doing; if you have no special aptitude for language-learning, there is no point in forcing yourself beyond your daily capacity to assimilate new material. It is much better to learn a little at a time, and to learn that thoroughly.

Before beginning a new section or chapter, always spend ten minutes revising what you learnt the day before. When studying the chapters, first read each rule or numbered section carefully and re-read it to ensure that you have fully understood the grammar, then translate the following exercise(s) by writing down the answers. Check these by referring to the Key at the back of the book; if you have made too many mistakes, go back over the instruction before attempting the same questions again. After you have listened to the Conversations, read them aloud and see how closely you can imitate the voices on the recording.

When the course is completed, you should have a good understanding of the language – more than sufficient for general holiday or business purposes, and enough to lead quickly into an examination syllabus if this is your eventual aim. Remember that it is important to continue expanding your vocabulary through reading, listening to the radio and, best of all, through visiting the country.

We hope you will enjoy *Norwegian in Three Months*, and we wish you success with your studies.

## Contents

|  |    |   |     |
|--|----|---|-----|
| <i>Introduction</i>                                    | 7  | <i>Chapter 5</i>                        | 72  |
| <i>Pronunciation</i>                                   | 8  | The past tense of weak verbs            |     |
| <i>Chapter 1</i>                                       | 17 | The past tense of strong verbs          |     |
| Articles and nouns                                     |    | Adverbs                                 |     |
| Plural of nouns  |    | Word order                              |     |
| Subject pronouns                                       |    | Ordinal numbers                         |     |
| <i>Å være</i> ('to be') and <i>å ha</i><br>('to have') |    | Vocabulary, exercises<br>& conversation |     |
| Vocabulary, exercises<br>& conversation                |    | <i>Chapter 6</i>                        | 87  |
| <i>Chapter 2</i>                                       | 29 | The part participle                     |     |
| The genitive   |    | The perfect tense                       |     |
| Adjectives   |    | Rehearsing the verb                     |     |
| Article used with adjectives                           |    | More irregular verbs                    |     |
| Infinitive and present tense                           |    | Comparison of adverbs                   |     |
| Questions and answers                                  |    | More about adverbs                      |     |
| Vocabulary, exercises<br>& conversation                |    | Seasons                                 |     |
| <i>Chapter 3</i>                                       | 43 | Months and dates                        |     |
| The imperative   |    | Vocabulary, exercises<br>& conversation |     |
| More about questions                                   |    | <i>Chapter 7</i>                        | 103 |
| More about negatives                                   |    | The pluperfect                          |     |
| Demonstratives   |    | Verbs conjugated with <i>være</i>       |     |
| The numbers 1 to 100                                   |    | Prepositions                            |     |
| Vocabulary, exercises<br>& conversation                |    | <i>Det er</i> ('there is')              |     |
| <i>Chapter 4</i>                                       | 56 | Indefinite pronouns                     |     |
| Possessive adjectives                                  |    | More about numbers                      |     |
| Possessive pronouns                                    |    | The weather                             |     |
| More about adjectives                                  |    | Vocabulary, exercises<br>& conversation |     |
| Comparison of adjectives                               |    | <i>Chapter 8</i>                        | 115 |
| Object forms of the personal<br>pronouns               |    | The future tense                        |     |
| Time   |    | Reflexive verbs                         |     |
| Vocabulary, exercises<br>& conversation                |    | The relative pronoun                    |     |
|  |    | More about comparison                   |     |
|  |    | Co-ordinating conjunctions              |     |
|  |    | Vocabulary, exercises<br>& conversation |     |



|   |     |   |     |
|---|-----|---|-----|
| <i>Chapter 9</i>                                    | 129 | <i>Chapter 12</i>                           | 171 |
| More about conjunctions                             |     | More about prepositions                     |     |
| More about word order                               |     | The past participle used as<br>an adjective |     |
| The conditional tense                               |     | Colloquial speech                           |     |
| More about 'if' clauses                             |     | Greetings and congratulations               |     |
| 'That' clauses                                      |     | Vocabulary, exercises<br>& conversation     |     |
| Countries and nationalities                         |     | <i>Key to exercises</i>                     | 186 |
| <i>I</i> and <i>på</i> with geographical<br>names   |     | <i>Appendix</i>                             | 198 |
| Vocabulary, exercises<br>& conversation             |     | Norwegian spelling                          |     |
| <i>Chapter 10</i>                                   | 146 | <i>Mini-dictionary</i>                      | 200 |
| The passive voice                                   |     | English–Norwegian                           |     |
| Active verbs with a passive<br>form                 |     | Norwegian–English                           |     |
| The present participle                              |     | <i>Index</i>                                | 230 |
| Compound words                                      |     |   |     |
| More about <i>i</i> and <i>på</i>                   |     |   |     |
| The use of <i>om</i>                                |     |   |     |
| Vocabulary, exercises<br>& conversation             |     |   |     |
| <i>Chapter 11</i>                                   | 161 |   |     |
| More expressions of time                            |     |   |     |
| For <i>å</i> ('in order to')                        |     |   |     |
| More about <i>det</i>                               |     |   |     |
| <i>Det</i> as a preliminary subject                 |     |   |     |
| The verbs <i>ligge, sitte, stå</i><br>and <i>gå</i> |     |   |     |
| Vocabulary, exercises<br>& conversation             |     |   |     |

## Introduction

### The language situation in Norway

Norway has two official written languages. But so has Belgium – and Switzerland even has four. However, their languages belong to different nationalities, namely Dutch and French in Belgium, and German, French, Italian and Rhaeto-Romanic in Switzerland. What makes the language situation in Norway so special is that this country has two written languages which are both Norwegian: **Bokmål** (Book Standard) and **Nynorsk** (New Norwegian). But this does not mean that the English student has to learn both languages: first of all, because the differences between the two are not very significant, even if they are vital to the adherents on both sides, and secondly because, with an adequate knowledge of Bokmål, you will be able to understand what the great majority of Norwegians say – and you will be understood by people throughout the country. In addition to this most newspapers and three quarters of all programmes on the NRK (Norwegian Broadcasting Corporation) accord with the Bokmål standard, and more than 80% of the pupils in Norwegian schools have Bokmål as their main language. It should be noted, however, that the official Bokmål orthography offers some freedom of choice between different spellings of the same word. This is not as confusing as it may sound. In most cases there is a choice between one traditional or 'moderate' norm and one 'radical' norm (more like the Nynorsk norm).

### The language of this course

For the English student there is no need to bother about different norms or standards of Norwegian. In this course we have chosen a moderate Bokmål norm acceptable to most Norwegians. Only in a few cases have we included alternative forms used in colloquial Norwegian and in the media.

## Pronunciation

The pronunciation and intonation of the Norwegian language are rather different from English. In this course we have simplified things for you by using Hugo's system of imitated pronunciation in the early chapters. By means of this, you will be able to acquire a pronunciation which is accurate enough to make yourself understood. Naturally, if you wish to hear and learn perfect pronunciation, you should use the cassette recordings which we have produced to accompany the course. These will allow you to hear the words and phrases as you follow them in the book.

Whether you use the tape recordings or not, you should read through the following rules and advice on Norwegian pronunciation. But there is no need to learn the rules by heart; just return to them at frequent intervals, and you will soon become familiar with them. Although Norwegian spelling may seem complicated, it is more regular than that of English, so you can generally tell from the written form of a word how it is pronounced. Some guidelines on Norwegian spelling are given in the Appendix.

In the meantime, you can start at Chapter 1 and rely on our imitated pronunciation. But note that there is hardly a single sound in English that corresponds exactly to any sound in Norwegian. So try right from the start to get as close as possible to the Norwegian sounds as they are described on the following pages.

### Short and long vowels and consonants

In Norwegian both vowels and consonants can be either short or long. All stressed syllables (see page 14) must contain either a long vowel sound or a long consonant sound. According to the general spelling rule, a long vowel

is usually followed by a short (single) consonant: **tak** 'ceiling', and a short vowel by a long consonant (double letter or combination of two or more letters): **takk** 'thanks', **bank** 'bank'. A stressed final vowel is always long: **se** 'see'. English speakers tend to turn the long vowels into diphthongs, because this is what usually happens in English (e.g. in 'boat', 'say'). Resist the temptation to do this!

### The imitated pronunciation

In the first five chapters of this course, at the end of each section where new words are introduced, the imitated pronunciation is given, showing how the Norwegian words are pronounced. As far as possible, the pronunciation of the Norwegian is rendered as if each syllable formed part of an English word. The system of imitated pronunciation is explained below in the sections on the pronunciation of vowels, diphthongs and consonants. Note that we use a colon (:) to indicate the long version of most Norwegian vowels.

### Pronunciation of vowels

| <i>Norwegian letter</i>   | <i>Imitated pronunciation</i> |
|---|-------------------------------|
| <b>a</b> can be either short or long. When long, it is pronounced like the 'a' in English 'father' or 'half': <b>hat</b> 'hatred'.                  | ah:                           |
| The short version of the same sound has no exact equivalent in English but is almost like the 'u' of 'hut': <b>hatt</b> 'hat'.                      | ah                            |
| <b>e</b> in a stressed syllable is usually pronounced, in its short version, like the 'e' in English 'pen': <b>penn</b> 'pen'.                      | e                             |
| The equivalent longer vowel is similar to the 'ai' in English 'fair', but it is a single pure vowel sound, not a diphthong: <b>pen</b> 'beautiful'. | e:                            |

| <i>Norwegian letter</i>   | <i>Imitated pronunciation</i> |
|---|-------------------------------|
| <b>e</b> before <b>r</b> is sometimes pronounced like an English 'a'. The long version is as in 'glad': <b>her</b> 'here'. The short version is as in 'mat': <b>berg</b> 'mountain'.  | a:<br>a                       |
| <b>e</b> in an unstressed syllable (often following a stressed syllable) is pronounced like the 'e' sound in English 'the', 'father' or 'garden': <b>gate</b> 'street', <b>sitte</b> 'sit'. When a word ends in <b>e</b> the final <b>e</b> is almost always pronounced in this way.  | e                             |
| <b>i</b> can again be either long, like 'ee' in English 'week': <b>bil</b> 'car' or short, like the 'i' in English 'sit' or 'in': <b>bilde</b> 'picture'.   | ee<br>i                       |
| <b>o</b> is usually pronounced like the English 'oo' but with the lips more rounded. The long version is very long, like English 'moon' or 'blue': <b>bok</b> 'book'. The short version is as in 'took' or 'full': <b>kost</b> 'brush'.   | oo:<br>oo                     |
| <b>o</b> in some words is pronounced like the 'aw' in English 'saw': <b>foretrekke</b> 'prefer'. The short version of this vowel is similar to the English 'o' in 'stop': <b>stopp</b> 'stop'.  | aw<br>o                       |
| <b>u</b> has no equivalent in English. It is similar to the 'oo' sound, but pronounced with more protruded lips, giving a less rounded sound (something like English 'u' in 'pure' but without the 'y' sound). It can be long as in <b>hus</b> 'house', or short as in <b>buss</b> 'bus'. (Don't pronounce it like the southern English 'u' in 'butter'!) | u:<br>u                       |
| <b>y</b> is pronounced like the German 'ü' in Lübeck or the French 'u' in 'tu' and 'lune', with very tight, protruded lips. (Take care not to pronounce it like an English 'oo'). It can be long as in <b>lys</b> 'light', or short as in <b>hytte</b> 'hut'.   | ü:<br>ü                       |

| <i>Norwegian letter</i>  | <i>Imitated pronunciation</i> |
|--|-------------------------------|
| <b>æ</b> is usually pronounced in the same way as the Norwegian <b>e</b> before <b>r</b> ; that is, like the 'a' in 'glad' (long): <b>være</b> 'to be', or like the 'a' in 'mat' (short): <b>vært</b> 'been'.                                | a:<br>a                       |
| <b>ø</b> is pronounced like the 'er' in 'her' or 'ir' in 'sir' but with more rounded lips (and don't make the 'r' sound!). The long version is similar in length to 'first': <b>øre</b> 'ear'. It can also be short as in <b>øst</b> 'east'. | ö:<br>ö                       |
| <b>å</b> in some words is pronounced like 'aw' (long): <b>båt</b> 'boat' or in other words like 'o' in 'stop': <b>åtte</b> 'eight'.  | aw<br>o                       |

## Pronunciation of diphthongs

Norwegian has six diphthongs (i.e. combinations of two vowel sounds in a single syllable). They are **au**, **ei**, **øy**, **ai**, **oi**, **ui**, of which the last three occur in only very few words. The first sound in these diphthongs is shorter and the second longer than in the English diphthongs.

| <i>Norwegian letter</i>  | <i>Imitated pronunciation</i> |
|--|-------------------------------|
| <b>au</b> consists of a first sound pronounced like the 'a' in English 'glad' and a second like the sound described above for Norwegian <b>u</b> : <b>sau</b> 'sheep', <b>maur</b> 'ant'.                | au                            |
| <b>ei</b> is spelt in two ways, and is pronounced in a similar way to 'ay' in English 'day', but the first sound is more like the 'a' in 'glad': <b>nei</b> 'no', <b>meg</b> 'me', <b>stein</b> 'stone'. | ay                            |
| <b>øy</b> is also spelt in two ways. It consists of a first sound like 'er' and a second sound like the 'y' in English 'year': <b>øy</b> 'island', <b>døgn</b> '24 hours', <b>røyk</b> 'smoke'.          | öy                            |

Norwegian  
letter

Imitated  
pronunciation

**ai** is pronounced like the 'i' in English 'fine'  
or the 'y' in 'my': **mai** 'May', **hai** 'shark'. y

## Pronunciation of consonants

The pronunciation of the Norwegian consonants is in most cases very similar to that of their English counterparts. But some essential differences should be observed. Watch out for the following.

Norwegian  
letter

Imitated  
pronunciation

**g** is usually like the 'g' in English 'good'  
never like the 'g' in 'general': **glad** 'glad'. g

**g** before **ei**, **i** and **y**, however, is pronounced  
like the Norwegian **j**; that is, like the 'y'  
in English 'yes': **geit** 'goat', **å gi** 'to give',  
**gyllen** 'golden'. y

**j** is pronounced, as mentioned above, like  
the English 'y' in 'yes': **fjord** 'fjord'. It  
never sounds like the English 'j' in 'join'. y

**ng** is always pronounced as in English 'song'  
or 'singer', never as in 'hunger' or 'finger';  
that is, there is no separate 'g' sound:  
**engelsk**, 'English'. ng

**r** is always pronounced, unlike the 'r' in  
southern English (e.g. in 'for', 'cart'). It is  
rolled, like a Scots 'r', and similarly to an  
Italian one, but with less prominence:  
**berg** 'mountain'. r

### Long consonants

As we have already mentioned (page 8) Norwegian has not only long vowels, but also long consonants (indicated by double letters or a combinations of two or more letters). Take care to linger a little more on the long consonants, particularly in words of more than one syllable, for example in: **ponni** 'pony', **stille** 'still'. In English we don't usually linger on double letters like this, except in combinations of two words, such as the 'nn' in 'pine-needle' or the 'll' in 'still-life'.

### Silent consonants

Norwegian  
letter

Imitated  
pronunciation

**d** is silent:  
after **r**: **bord** 'table', **fjord** 'fjord'  
after **l** or **n**: **kveld** 'evening', **holde** 'hold'  
after a long vowel: **glad** 'glad', **god** 'good'.  
But **d** is pronounced in **Gud** 'God'.

**g** is silent:  
before **j**: **gjøre** 'do', **gjemme** 'hide', **igjen**  
'again'  
in words ending in **-ig**: **ferdig** 'ready'  
in some other words, e.g.: **morgen** 'morning',  
**følge** 'follow'.

**h** is silent before **j** and **v**: **hjelp** 'help', **hvor** 'where'.

**t** is silent in the definite form of neuter nouns:  
**landet** 'the country', and also in the word **det** 'it'.

**v** is usually silent at the end of a word after **l**, as in  
**halv** 'half', **tolv** 'twelve', **selv** 'self', **sølv** 'silver'.  
But it is pronounced in **elv** 'river'.

### k before a consonant

**k** before a consonant must always be pronounced,  
as in **kvinne** 'woman', **krone** 'crown'. Note that **k**  
it is always pronounced before **n**, unlike in  
English: **kniv** 'knife', **kne** 'knee'.



Norwegian  
letter

Imitated  
pronunciation

#### The kj sound

The kj sound is a slightly guttural sound, pronounced like the German 'ch' in 'ich' (less guttural than the 'ch' in Scottish 'loch') or a strongly aspirated 'h' in English 'huge'. It is written in three different ways.

- kj** as in: **kjær** 'dear', **kjøre** 'drive' kh  
**k** before **ei**, **i**, and **y**, as in: **keivhendt**  
'left-handed', **kilo** 'kilo', **kyst** 'coast'.  
**tj** as in **tjern** 'small lake, tarn', **tjære** 'tar'.

#### The sj sound

This sound is pronounced like 'sh' in English 'shall'. In words of Norwegian origin it is written in three different ways.

- sj** as in **sjelden** 'seldom', **sjø** 'sea' sh  
**skj** as in: **skjegg** 'beard', **skjorte** 'shirt'  
**sk** before **ei**, **i**, and **y** as in: **skeie ut** 'to go to the  
bad', **skip** 'ship', **sky** 'cloud'.

In foreign words the sj sound may be written **sch**: **schæfer** 'alsatian'; **sh**: **sherry**; **ch**: **champion**; **g**: **giro**, **j**: **journalist**. In all these words it is pronounced 'sh'.

## Stress, rhythm and tone

### Stress and rhythm

In words of Norwegian (Germanic) origin the stress usually falls on the first syllable, which means that this syllable is said louder, with more emphasis. Examples: **gate** 'street', **kaste** 'throw'. In words borrowed from other languages the stress is often on the last syllable, as in **dusin** 'dozen', **tobakk** 'tobacco', **trykkeri** 'printing works'.

Prefixes of foreign origin (e.g. **be-**, **er-**, **ge-**) are not stressed, as in: **betale** 'pay', **erklære** 'declare', **gevær** 'rifle, gun'. In words with other prefixes, mainly prepositions (**av**, **fra**, **mot**,

**opp**, **ned** etc.), the stress usually falls on the first syllable, as in: **avgjøre** 'decide', **frata** 'deprive of', **motstand** 'resistance', **nedtrykt** 'depressed'.

Note that suffixes (**-else**, **-ing**, **-ling**, **-ig**, **-lig**, etc.) often transfer the stress from the first syllable to the syllable preceding the suffix, as in: **tillatelse** 'permission', **underholdning** 'entertainment', **alvorlig** 'serious'.

In the imitated pronunciation (following each section of the first five chapters) the stress is indicated by an accent mark (´) following the stressed syllable. But this indication is only based on the pronunciation of each word when spoken separately. When words are used in continuous speech, the stress will vary with the rhythm of the sentence. Norwegian sentences often have a trochaic (strong-weak-strong-weak) pattern, as in:

**Ja, vi elsker dette landet!** Yes, we love this country!  
**Kom og sett deg her ved bordet!** Come and sit down  
at the table!

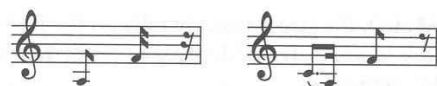
**Jeg må gå og lese lekser.** I must go and do my homework.  
**Er du ikke ferdig ennå?** Haven't you finished yet?

In rapid everyday speech, however, the rhythm will vary a lot more, according to the emphasis given to certain words and to the intonation of the whole sentence.

### Tone

In Norwegian words the stress is closely linked with tone. This can easily be shown in the pronunciation of two homophonic words (different words which sound alike), such as **løvet** 'the foliage' and **løve** 'lion'. In both words the stress is on the first syllable, but they are pronounced with a different melody or tone. **Løvet** starts on a fairly low tone and then rises (single tone).

**Løve** starts on a medium note and then falls a little before it rises (double tone). This is shown in musical notation in the following illustration.



løvet

løve

Note that this description of the two different tones (single tone in **løvet** and double tone in **løve**) applies to the pronunciation in Eastern Norway, but most Norwegians have a kind of rising and falling tone which gives their speech a singing intonation.

## The Norwegian alphabet

|         |         |                    |         |
|---------|---------|--------------------|---------|
| A (ah:) | I (ee)  | Q (ku:)            | Y (ü:)  |
| B (be:) | J (yod) | R (ar)             | Z (set) |
| C (se:) | K (kaw) | S (es)             | Æ (a:)  |
| D (de:) | L (el)  | T (te:)            | Ø (ö:)  |
| E (e:)  | M (em)  | U (u:)             | Å (aw)  |
| F (ef)  | N (en)  | V (ve:)            |         |
| G (ge)  | O (oo)  | W (doob'-belt-ve:) |         |
| H (haw) | P (pe:) | X (eks)            |         |

## Chapter 1

In this first chapter you will meet some of the basic building blocks of Norwegian. It covers:

- the indefinite and definite articles ('a/an' and 'the')
- nouns – names for people and things – and the concept of gender
- the subject pronouns ('I', 'you', etc.)
- two important verbs: 'to be' and 'to have'

### 1 Articles and nouns

In Norwegian, nouns (words for people, things etc.) can be masculine, feminine or neuter, and articles must agree in gender and number with the noun to which they refer. For your purposes, however, it is sufficient to distinguish between only two genders: *common gender* (**en**-words – comprising masculine and feminine nouns) and *neuter gender* (**et**-words).

The indefinite article – in English 'a' – stands *before* the noun and is expressed by **en** (*common gender*) and **et** (*neuter gender*).

**en koffert** a suitcase

**en lommebok\*** a wallet

**et pass** a passport

\* This is a feminine noun. Instead of **en**, **ei** is sometimes used as the feminine indefinite article in colloquial speech and always in Nynorsk: **ei lommebok**.

The definite article – in English ‘the’ – is placed *after* the noun in Norwegian and forms one word with it. It is expressed by **-en** (*common gender*) and **-et** (*neuter gender*):

**kofferten** the suitcase  
**lommeboken\*** the wallet  
**passet** the passport

\* In feminine nouns **-a** is often used instead of **-en** in colloquial speech and always in Nynorsk: **lommeboka**.

Some feminine nouns nearly always appear with an **-a** ending in the definite form singular: **en** (or **ei**) **bygd** – **bygda** (the rural district); **en** (**ei**) **hytte** – **hytta** (the hut); **en** (**ei**) **jente** – **jenta** (the girl); **en** (**ei**) **geit** – **geita** (the goat); **en** (**ei**) **ku** – **kua** (the cow); etc.

Nouns of two or more syllables ending in an unstressed **-e** (*e*) only add **-n** and **-t** to the indefinite forms:

|                           |                           |
|---------------------------|---------------------------|
| <b>en gate</b> a street   | <b>gaten</b> the street   |
| <b>et bilde</b> a picture | <b>bildet</b> the picture |

But words ending in stressed **-e** add **-en** or **-et**:

|                       |                        |
|-----------------------|------------------------|
| <b>et kne</b> a knee  | <b>kneet</b> the knee  |
| <b>en kafé</b> a café | <b>kaféen</b> the café |

There are rules that can help to determine the gender of Norwegian nouns, but as these are complicated, the only practical way to learn whether a noun is common gender or neuter is by constant imitation and practice.

Note that the indefinite article is dropped in statements like:

**Han er rørlegger.** He is a plumber.  
**De har ikke telefon.** They don't have a telephone.  
**Han arbeider på fabrikk.** He works in a factory.

IMITATED PRONUNCIATION e:n koof'-fert, e:n loom'-me'-boo:k et pahs; koof'-fer-ten, loom'-me-boo:-ken, pahs'-se; e:n (ay) bügd, büg'-dah; e:n hüt'-te, hüt'-tah; e:n yen'-te, yen'-tah; e:n yayt, yay'-tah; e:n ku:, ku:'-ah; e:n gah'-te, gah'-ten; et bil'-de, bil'-de; et kne:, kne:'-e, e:n kah-fe:', kah-fe:'-en, hahn a:r rö:r'-leg-ger; dee hah:r ik'-ke te-le-foo:n'; hahn ahr'-bay-der paw fah-brik'

## Exercise 1

A Put the appropriate indefinite article before the following nouns:

- .. koffert
- .. lommebok
- .. pass
- .. gate
- .. bilde
- .. stasjon (*common gender*) (station)
- .. rute (*common gender*) (route)
- .. tog (*neuter gender*) (train)
- .. buss (*common gender*) (bus)
- .. fly (*neuter gender*) (aeroplane)

B Repeat the above exercise using the definite article.

IMITATED PRONUNCIATION (6) stah-shoo:n' (7) ru:'-te (8) tawg (9) bus (10) flü:

## 2A Plural of nouns: indefinite form

The plural of nouns of common gender is formed by adding **-er** to the singular:

|                        |                      |
|------------------------|----------------------|
| <b>en stol</b> a chair | <b>stoler</b> chairs |
| <b>en seng</b> a bed   | <b>senger</b> beds   |

|                       |                     |
|-----------------------|---------------------|
| <b>en vegg</b> a wall | <b>vegger</b> walls |
| <b>en dør</b> a door  | <b>dører</b> doors  |

Neuter nouns of one syllable usually remain unchanged in the plural:

|                        |                    |
|------------------------|--------------------|
| <b>et bord</b> a table | <b>bord</b> tables |
| <b>et hus</b> a house  | <b>hus</b> houses  |
| <b>et lys</b> a light  | <b>lys</b> lights  |
| <b>et egg</b> an egg   | <b>egg</b> eggs    |

Neuter nouns of more than one syllable can also remain unchanged in the plural, but usually add **-er** to the singular:

|                                  |                                |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| <b>et vindu</b> a window         | <b>vinduer</b> windows         |
| <b>et fotografi</b> a photograph | <b>fotografier</b> photographs |

Nouns of both genders ending in an unstressed **-e (e)** only add **-r** in the plural:

|                          |                       |
|--------------------------|-----------------------|
| <b>en skole</b> a school | <b>skoler</b> schools |
| <b>en kvinne</b> a woman | <b>kvinner</b> women  |
| <b>et teppe</b> a carpet | <b>tepper</b> carpets |
| <b>et eple</b> an apple  | <b>epler</b> apples   |

But those ending in a stressed **-e** add **-er**:

|                         |                       |
|-------------------------|-----------------------|
| <b>en bre</b> a glacier | <b>breer</b> glaciers |
| <b>en kafé</b> a cafe   | <b>kaféer</b> cafés   |

Note that some nouns change their stem vowel in the plural, such as:

|                          |                         |
|--------------------------|-------------------------|
| <b>en tann</b> a tooth   | <b>tenner</b> teeth     |
| <b>en natt</b> a night   | <b>netter</b> nights    |
| <b>en bok</b> a book     | <b>bøker</b> books      |
| <b>en bonde</b> a farmer | <b>bønder</b> farmers   |
| <b>en ku</b> a cow       | <b>kyr or kuer</b> cows |
| <b>en hånd</b> a hand    | <b>hender</b> hands     |

Note also the following nouns with other irregularities in addition to the change of vowel:

|                             |                        |
|-----------------------------|------------------------|
| <b>en far</b> a father      | <b>fedre</b> fathers   |
| <b>en mor</b> a mother      | <b>mødre</b> mothers   |
| <b>en datter</b> a daughter | <b>døtre</b> daughters |
| <b>et tre</b> a tree        | <b>trær</b> trees      |
| <b>en mann</b> a man        | <b>menn</b> men        |

IMITATED PRONUNCIATION stoo:l, stoo:'-ler; seng, seng'-er; veg, veg'-ger; dö:r, dö'-rer; boo:r, boo:r, hu:s, hu:s; lü:s, lü:s; eg, eg; vin'-du, vin'-du-er; foo-too-grah-fee', foo-too-grah-fee'-er; skoo:'-le, skoo:'-ler; kvin'-ne, kvin'-ner; tep'-pe, tep'-per; ep'-le, ep'-ler; bre:, bre:'-er; kah-fe:', kah-fe:'-er; tahn, ten'-ner; naht, net'-ter; boo:k, bö:'-ker; ku:, khü:r, ku:'-er; hon, hen'-ner; fah:r, fe':-dre; moo:r, mö:'-dre; daht'-ter, dö't'-re; tre:, tra:r; mahn, men

## Exercise 2

Give the plural of the following words:

- |                                      |         |
|--------------------------------------|---------|
| 1 stol                               | 7 teppe |
| 2 seng                               | 8 bok   |
| 3 bord                               | 9 hånd  |
| 4 hus                                | 10 mor  |
| 5 vindu                              | 11 tre  |
| 6 skole                              | 12 mann |
| 13 by (common gender) (city, town)   |         |
| 14 trapp (common gender) (staircase) |         |
| 15 fjell (neuter gender) (mountain)  |         |

IMITATED PRONUNCIATION (13) bü: (14) trahp (15) fyel

## 2B Plural of nouns: definite form

In the plural the definite article 'the' is expressed by **-ene** added to the singular form of the noun:

|                   |                            |
|-------------------|----------------------------|
| <b>stol</b> chair | <b>stolene</b> the chairs  |
| <b>seng</b> bed   | <b>sengene</b> the beds    |
| <b>bord</b> table | <b>bordene*</b> the tables |
| <b>hus</b> house  | <b>husene*</b> the houses  |

\* In nouns of neuter gender the definite article **-a** is sometimes used instead of **-ene** in colloquial Bokmål (and always in Nynorsk). Some neuters nearly always appear in the **-a** form: **et ben** (a leg) – **bena** (the legs); **et barn** (a child) – **barna** (the children).



Nouns of two or more syllables ending in an unstressed -e only add **-ne** in the definite form of the plural:

|                     |                            |
|---------------------|----------------------------|
| <b>skole</b> school | <b>skolene</b> the schools |
| <b>kvinne</b> woman | <b>kvinnene</b> the women  |
| <b>eple</b> apple   | <b>eplene</b> the apples   |

But: **breene** (the glaciers), **kaféene** (the cafés).

IMITATED PRONUNCIATION stoo:'-le-ne, seng'-e-ne, boo:'-re-ne, hu:'-se-ne; be:n, be:'-nah; bah:rn, bah:r'-nah; skoo:'-le-ne, kvin'-ne, ep'-le-ne; bre:'-e-ne, kah-fe:'-e-ne

### Exercise 3

Give the following nouns in the indefinite and definite forms, in both singular and plural (model answer: *en vegg – veggen – vegger – veggene*):

- |   |         |
|---|---------|
| 1 stol                                  | 6 teppe |
| 2 seng                                  | 7 skole |
| 3 bord                                  | 8 hånd  |
| 4 hus                                   | 9 mor   |
| 5 vindu                                 | 10 tre  |
| 11 <b>vei</b> (common gender) (road)    |         |
| 12 <b>bil</b> (common gender) (car)     |         |
| 13 <b>lampe</b> (common gender) (lamp)  |         |
| 14 <b>gulv</b> (neuter gender) (floor)  |         |
| 15 <b>tak</b> (neuter gender) (ceiling) |         |

IMITATED PRONUNCIATION (11) vay (12) beel (13) lahm'-pe (14) gulv (15) tah:k

### 3 Subject pronouns

| Singular   |                | Plural      |                |
|------------|----------------|-------------|----------------|
| <b>jeg</b> | I              | <b>vi</b>   | we             |
| <b>du</b>  | you (familiar) | <b>dere</b> | you (familiar) |
| <b>De</b>  | you (formal)   | <b>Dere</b> | you (formal)   |
| <b>han</b> | he             |             |                |
| <b>hun</b> | she            |             |                |
| <b>den</b> | (common) it    | <b>de</b>   | they           |
| <b>det</b> | (neuter) it    |             |                |

The subject pronoun **De** is used when talking to strangers or people you do not know well, especially elderly persons. But it is becoming less common, and many people, especially teenagers, use **du** to each other even on their first meeting.

IMITATED PRONUNCIATION yay, du:, dee, hahn, hun, den, de:, vee, de:'-re, dee

### 4 Å være ('to be') and å ha ('to have')

Å være and å ha have the same form in all persons in the singular and in the plural:

Present tense

|                     |          |                      |           |
|---------------------|----------|----------------------|-----------|
| <b>jeg er</b>       | I am     | <b>jeg har</b>       | I have    |
| <b>du/De er</b>     | you are  | <b>du/De har</b>     | you have  |
| <b>han er</b>       | he is    | <b>han har</b>       | he has    |
| <b>hun er</b>       | she is   | <b>hun har</b>       | she has   |
| <b>den/det er</b>   | it is    | <b>den/det har</b>   | it has    |
| <b>vi er</b>        | we are   | <b>vi har</b>        | we have   |
| <b>dere/Dere er</b> | you are  | <b>dere/Dere har</b> | you have  |
| <b>de er</b>        | they are | <b>de har</b>        | they have |

## Vocabulary

Study these words:

|                            |                   |
|----------------------------|-------------------|
| spørsmålet                 | the question      |
| og                         | and               |
| svaret                     | the answer        |
| hva                        | what              |
| ditt (Deres)               | your              |
| navnet                     | the name          |
| Hva heter du (De)?         | What's your name? |
| mitt                       | my                |
| amerikansk                 | American          |
| nei                        | no                |
| engelsk                    | English           |
| noen                       | any               |
| vennen                     | the friend        |
| i                          | in                |
| Norge                      | Norway            |
| Ja, det har jeg.           | Yes, I have.      |
| hvor                       | where             |
| konen                      | the wife          |
| din (Deres) kone           | your wife         |
| butikken                   | the shop          |
| to                         | two               |
| også                       | too               |
| Ja, det er de.             | Yes, they are.    |
| hvor gamle (sing.: gammel) | how old           |
| tolv                       | twelve            |
| fjorten                    | fourteen          |
| året                       | the year          |

IMITATED PRONUNCIATION yag a:r, du: a:r, hahn a:r, hun a:r, den a:r, de: a:r, vee a:r, de:'-re a:r, dee a:r; yay hah:r, du: hah:r, hahn hah:r, hun hah:r, den hah:r, de: hah:r, vee hah:r, de:'-re hah:r, dee hah:r; spörs'-maw-le; aw:, svah:'-re; vah:; dit (de:'-res); nahv'-ne; vah: he:'-ter du: (dee); mit; ah-me-ri-kah:nsk'; nay; eng'-elsk; noo:'-en; ven'-nen; ee; nor'-ge; yah: de: hah:r yay; voor; koo:'-nen; deen (de:'-res) koo:'-ne; bu-tik'-ken; too; os'-so; yah: de: a:r dee; voor gahm'-le; tol; fyoor'-ten; aw'-re

## Exercise 4

Questions and answers. Translate:

- 1 What's your name?
- 2 My name's Anthony McLeod.
- 3 Are you American?
- 4 No, I'm English.
- 5 Have you any friends in Norway?
- 6 Yes, I have.
- 7 Where's your wife?
- 8 She's in the shop.
- 9 Have you any children?
- 10 Yes, we have two children.
- 11 Are they in Norway too?
- 12 Yes, they are.
- 13 How old are they?
- 14 They are twelve and fourteen years old.

## Vocabulary

|                     |                     |
|---------------------|---------------------|
| samtalen            | the conversation    |
| på vei(en)          | on the way          |
| til                 | to                  |
| jernbanestasjonen   | the railway station |
| unnskyld (meg)      | excuse me           |
| hvordan             | how                 |
| hvordan kommer jeg? | how do I get?       |
| bare                | just                |
| å gå over           | to cross            |
| torget              | the square          |

|                     |                                |
|---------------------|--------------------------------|
| å ta                | to take                        |
| den første          | the first                      |
| til venstre         | on your left                   |
| så                  | then                           |
| går De              | you go                         |
| rett frem           | straight on                    |
| ned                 | down                           |
| trafikklysene       | the traffic lights             |
| å krysse            | to cross                       |
| du ser              | you'll see                     |
| like                | just                           |
| foran               | in front of                    |
| tror De?            | do you think?                  |
| kan                 | can                            |
| å huske             | to remember                    |
| det                 | that                           |
| ja da               | oh yes                         |
| mange takk          | thank you very much            |
| forresten           | by the way                     |
| jeg skal til        | I'm on my way to               |
| selv                | myself (himself, herself etc.) |
| virkelig            | really                         |
| å følge             | to go with                     |
| hvis                | if                             |
| å ønske             | to wish                        |
| snilt (av)          | kind (of)                      |
| min familie         | my family                      |
| venter på meg       | is waiting for me              |
| på stasjonen        | at the station                 |
| jeg gikk (for å)    | I went (to)                    |
| gjøre noen innkjøp  | do some shopping               |
| men                 | but                            |
| jeg gikk meg vill   | I got lost                     |
| min mann            | my husband                     |
| billettene          | the tickets                    |
| jeg har det travelt | I'm in a hurry                 |
| vårt tog            | our train                      |
| å gå                | to leave                       |
| om en halv time     | in half an hour                |
| ikke så langt       | not that far                   |
| vi skal             | we'll                          |
| der                 | there                          |

|          |            |
|----------|------------|
| ti       | ten        |
| minuttet | the minute |

IMITATED PRONUNCIATION sahm'-tah-len; paw vay; til; ya:rn'-bah-ne-stah-shoo: '-nen; un-shül; voor'dahn kom'-mer yay; bah: '-re; aw gaw aw-ver; tor'-ge; aw tah; den förs'-te; til ven'-stre; saw; gawr dee; ret frem; ne:d; trah-fik'-lū:-se-ne; aw krüs'-se; du: se:r; lee'-ke; fo'-rahn; troo:r dee; kahn; aw hus'-ke; de; yah: '-dah; mahng'-e tahk; for-res'-ten; yay skahl til; sel; vir'-ke-lee; aw föl'-le; vis; aw öns'-ke; snilt (ah:v); meen fah-mee'-lye; ven'-ter paw may; paw stah-shoo: '-nen; yey yik (for aw); yö: '-re noo: '-en in'-khöp; men; yay yik may vil; meen mahn; bil-let'-te-ne; yay hah:r de: trah: '-velt; vort tag; aw gaw; om e:n hahl tee'-me; ik'-ke saw lahngt; vee skahl; da:r; tee; mi-nut'-te

## Conversation

### På vei til jernbanestasjonen On the way to the railway station

- Janice McLeod** Unnskyld, hvordan kommer jeg til jernbanestasjonen?  
*Excuse me, how do I get to the railway station?*
- Sverre Holm** Bare gå over torget og ta den første gaten til venstre. Så går De rett frem ned til trafikklysene, krysser gaten, og De ser jernbanestasjonen like foran Dem. Tror De De kan huske det?  
*Just cross the square and take the first street on your left. Then you go straight on down to the traffic lights, cross the street and you'll see the railway station just in front of you. Do you think you'll remember that?*
- Janice McLeod** Ja da, mange takk.  
*Oh yes, thank you very much.*

→

- Sverre Holm** Forresten, jeg skal til jernbanestasjonen selv.  
*By the way, I'm on my way to the railway station myself.*
- Janice McLeod** Skal De virkelig det?  
*Are you really?*
- Sverre Holm** Ja, og jeg vil følge Dem hvis De ønsker. Jeg heter Sverre Holm.  
*Yes, and I'll go with you if you wish. My name is Sverre Holm.*
- Janice McLeod** Det er meget snilt av Dem, herr Holm. Mitt navn er Janice McLeod. Min familie venter på meg på stasjonen. Jeg gikk for å gjøre noen innkjøp i Oslo, men jeg gikk meg vill. Min mann har våre koffertene og billetter. Og passene! Jeg har det travelt! Toget vårt går om en halv time.  
*That's very kind of you, Mr Holm. My name's Janice McLeod. My family is waiting for me at the station. I went to do some shopping in Oslo, but I got lost. My husband's got our suitcases and our tickets. And the passports! I'm in a hurry! Our train leaves in half an hour.*
- Sverre Holm** Å, det er ikke så langt. Vi skal være der om ti minutter.  
*Oh, it's not that far. We'll be there in ten minutes.*

## Chapter 2

In this chapter you will learn:

- how to express possession (using the possessive or genitive form) in Norwegian
- how adjectives agree in gender and number with nouns
- the form of the definite article when used with adjectives
- how to form the present tense of most verbs
- how to ask 'yes/no' questions ... and how to answer them

### 5 The genitive

In Norwegian, nouns in the possessive (or genitive) form add -s, without an apostrophe as in English:

|               |                        |
|---------------|------------------------|
| naboens hage  | the neighbour's garden |
| guttens lærer | the boy's teacher      |
| pikenes bror  | the girls' brother     |
| barnets mor   | the child's mother     |

Note that the use of the -s genitive is not restricted to nouns which refer to people:

|                      |                                       |
|----------------------|---------------------------------------|
| båtens eier          | the owner of the boat                 |
| Norges fjorder       | the fjords of Norway                  |
| landets grenser      | the borders of the country            |
| myndighetenes ansvar | the responsibility of the authorities |

In colloquial Norwegian, however, the genitive is often expressed by a preposition (**til**, **av**):

|                    |
|--------------------|
| hagen til naboen   |
| læreren til gutten |
| moren til barnet   |
| eieren av båten    |



Compound nouns are also used to replace the -s genitive:

**båteieren** (the boat owner) = **båtens eier**  
**landegrensene** (the national boundaries) = **landets grenser**

## Vocabulary

|                      |               |
|----------------------|---------------|
| <b>avisen</b>        | the newspaper |
| <b>søsteren</b>      | the sister    |
| <b>foreldrene</b>    | the parents   |
| <b>kunden</b>        | the customer  |
| <b>vesken, posen</b> | the bag       |
| <b>farten</b>        | the speed     |
| <b>fargen</b>        | the colour    |
| <b>blomsten</b>      | the flower    |
| <b>hjørnet</b>       | the corner    |

IMITATED PRONUNCIATION nah:'-boo-ens hah'-ge; gut'-tens la:'-rer; pee'-ke-nes broo:r; bah:r'-nes moo:r; baw'-tens ay'-er; nor'-ges fyoo:'-rer; lahn'-nes gren'-ser; mün'-dee-he:-te-nes ahn'-svah:r; hah'-gen til nah'-boo-en; la:'-re-ren til gut'-ten; moo:'-ren til bah:r'-ne; ay'-e-ren ahv baw'-ten; bawt-ay-e-ren; lahn'-ne-gren-se-ne; ah-vee'-sen; sö's'-te-ren; for-el'-dre-ne; kun'-den; ves'-ken, poo:'-sen; fahr'-ten; fahr'-gen; blom-sten; yö:r'-ne

## Exercise 5

Translate, using the -s genitive:

- 1 the man's newspaper
- 2 the sister's friend
- 3 the child's parents
- 4 the customers' bags
- 5 the name of the town
- 6 the speed of the train

- 7 the colours of the flowers
- 8 the corner of the house

## 6 Adjectives

Adjectives agree in gender and number with the noun to which they refer. They add no ending when used with common gender singular nouns. With neuter gender singular nouns they add a -t, and in the plural of both genders an -e: **god godt gode** (good).

|                        |                 |
|------------------------|-----------------|
| <b>en brun genser</b>  | a brown sweater |
| <b>et brunt skjerf</b> | a brown scarf   |
| <b>brune bukser</b>    | brown trousers  |

|                         |                            |
|-------------------------|----------------------------|
| <b>Bilen er dyr.</b>    | The car is expensive.      |
| <b>Huset er dyrt.</b>   | The house is expensive.    |
| <b>Kjolene er dyre.</b> | The dresses are expensive. |

Some adjectives have irregular forms in the neuter singular and/or the plural.

Adjectives ending in -ig or -lig, or in -t preceded by another consonant, have no additional -t in the neuter singular.

|                                   |                        |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------|
| <b>en vanskelig sak</b>           | a difficult cause      |
| <b>et feilaktig (riktig) svar</b> | a wrong (right) answer |
| <b>et farlig veikryss</b>         | a dangerous crossroads |
| <b>en sort kjole</b>              | a black dress          |
| <b>et sort skjørt</b>             | a black skirt          |

Adjectives ending in a stressed vowel, such as **fri**, **blå**, add -tt in the neuter singular:

|                                     |                                  |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <b>et fritt land</b> a free country | <b>et blått slips</b> a blue tie |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------|

Some of these adjectives add -e in the plural, others add no ending:

|                                 |                            |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------|
| <b>frie land</b> free countries | <b>blå slips</b> blue ties |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------|

Note also the irregular forms of the adjective **liten** 'little', 'small'; the plural is quite different:

**en liten hund** a little dog      **et lite ekorn** a little squirrel  
**små barn** little children      **små ekorn** little squirrels

## Vocabulary

|                      |                      |
|----------------------|----------------------|
| <b>lastebilen</b>    | the lorry            |
| <b>pakkhuset</b>     | the warehouse        |
| <b>varemagasinet</b> | the department store |
| <b>blusen</b>        | the blouse           |
| <b>gul</b>           | yellow               |
| <b>rød</b>           | red                  |
| <b>skoen</b>         | the shoe             |
| <b>tynn</b>          | thin, light          |
| <b>lang</b>          | long                 |
| <b>spiss</b>         | pointed              |
| <b>lys</b>           | fair                 |
| <b>håret</b>         | the hair             |
| <b>øyet</b>          | the eye              |
| <b>øyne(ne)</b>      | (the) eyes           |
| <b>haken</b>         | the chin             |
| <b>arret</b>         | the scar             |
| <b>pannen</b>        | the forehead         |
| <b>fregnene</b>      | the freckles         |
| <b>nesen</b>         | the nose             |
| <b>merkelig</b>      | peculiar             |
| <b>hyggelig</b>      | pleasant             |
| <b>møtet</b>         | the meeting          |
| <b>lett</b>          | easy                 |
| <b>dagen</b>         | the day              |
| <b>kort</b>          | short                |
| <b>livet</b>         | the life             |
| <b>timen</b>         | the hour             |
| <b>ny</b>            | new                  |
| <b>valget</b>        | the election         |
| <b>brå</b>           | sudden               |
| <b>stoppet</b>       | the stop             |

IMITATED PRONUNCIATION *goo:, got, goo:'-e; e:n bru:hn gen'-ser; et bru:nt sharf; bru:'-ne book'-ser; bee'-len a:r dü:r; hu:'-se a:r*

*dü:rt; khoo:'-le-ne a:r dü:'-re; e:n vahn'-ske-lee sah:k; et fayl-ahk'-tee (rik'-tee) svahr; et fahr'-lee vay'-krüs; e:n soort khoo:'-le; et soort shört; free; blaw; et frit lahn; et blot slips; free'-e lahn; blaw slips; e:n lee'-ten hun; et lee'-te ek'-koorn; smaw bah:rn; smaw ek'-koorn; lahs'-te-bee-len; pahk'-hu:-se; vah:'-re-mah-gah-see-ne; blu:'-sen; gu:l; rö;; skoo:'-en; tün; lahng; spis; lü:s; haw'-re; öy'-e; öy'-ne(-ne); hah:'-ken; ahr'-re; pahn'-nen; fray'-ne-ne; ne:'-sen; mar'-ke-lee; hüh'-ge-lee; mö'-te; let; dah:'-gen; kort; lee'-ve; tee'-men; nü;; vahl'-ge; brow; stop'-pe*

## Exercise 6

Fill in the correct form of the adjectives in Norwegian:

- 1 **en** (big) **lastebil**, **et** (big) **pakkhus**, (big) **varemagasiner**
- 2 **Blusen er** (yellow), **slipset er** (red), **skoene er** (black).
- 3 **Den [blusen] er** (light), **det [slipset] er** (long), **de [skoene] er** (pointed).
- 4 **Han har** (fair) **hår**, (blue) **øyne**, **en** (little) **hake**, **et** (little) **arr i pannen og** (little) **fregner på nesen**.
- 5 **et** (peculiar) **svar**, **et** (pleasant) **møte**, **et** (easy) **spørsmål**
- 6 **Livet er** (short), **dagen er** (short), **timene er** (short).
- 7 **et** (new) **møte**, **et** (free) **valg**, **et** (sudden) **stopp**

## 7 Article used with adjectives

We have already discussed the definite article **-en**, **-et**, **-ene** which is placed after the noun and forms one word with it (**kofferten**, **passet**, **stolene**). But Norwegian has another definite article placed before the noun (like 'the') in English. This article – **den**, **det**, **de** – is used when the definite form of the noun is preceded by an adjective.

|                       |                    |
|-----------------------|--------------------|
| <b>den store byen</b> | the large town     |
| <b>det høye huset</b> | the tall house     |
| <b>de dyre bilene</b> | the expensive cars |

The adjectives preceded by **den, det** or **de** add **-e** in both genders, singular and plural: **store, høye, dyre.**

Note particularly the irregular **-e** form of the adjective **liten**:

|                         |                  |
|-------------------------|------------------|
| <b>den lille hunden</b> | the little dog   |
| <b>det lille barnet</b> | the little child |

The **-e** form of the adjective is also used after some other classes of words, such as the demonstratives: **den, det, de**, 'that', 'that', 'those', and **denne, dette, disse**, 'this', 'this', 'these' (sec. 13), and the possessive adjectives (sec. 15).

In the examples given above we have a definite article both before and after the noun. This so-called double definite is typical of the Norwegian colloquial language and is especially used in connection with nouns referring to concrete things. In formal speech and in the written language, however, the definite article at the end of the noun can be dropped, particularly with abstract nouns:

|                           |                        |
|---------------------------|------------------------|
| <b>den nye tid</b>        | the new age            |
| <b>det ufødte liv</b>     | the unborn life        |
| <b>de gode muligheter</b> | the good possibilities |

## Vocabulary

|                    |               |
|--------------------|---------------|
| <b>undertøyet</b>  | the underwear |
| <b>varm</b>        | warm          |
| <b>klærne</b>      | the clothes   |
| <b>bondegården</b> | the farm      |
| <b>føllet</b>      | the foal      |

IMITATED PRONUNCIATION den stoo:'-re bü:'-en; de: höy-e hu:'-se; dee dü:'-re bee'-'le-ne; den lil'-'le hun'-nen; de: lil'-'le bah:r'-'ne; den nü:'-'e teed; de: u:'-föt-tē leev; dee goo:'-'e mu:'-lee-he-ter; un'-'ner-töy-e; vahrm; klar'-'ne; boon'-'ne-gaw-rēn; föl'-'le

## Exercise 7

Translate:

- 1 the brown sweater
- 2 the long underwear
- 3 the warm clothes
- 4 the new lorry
- 5 the big department store
- 6 the dangerous crossroads
- 7 the little farm
- 8 the little foal

## 8 Infinitive and present tense

In Norwegian the infinitive (equivalent of the English 'to' form) of most verbs ends in an unstressed **-e** and is preceded by **å** (*aw*):

|                 |         |                      |            |
|-----------------|---------|----------------------|------------|
| <b>å kjøpe</b>  | to buy  | <b>å pynte (seg)</b> | to turn    |
| <b>å selge</b>  | to sell | <b>å foretrekke</b>  | to prefer  |
| <b>å bruke</b>  | to use  | <b>å beskytte</b>    | to protect |
| <b>å trenge</b> | to need | <b>å fryse</b>       | to freeze  |

In some verbs the infinitive ends in a stressed vowel (any vowel except **e** at the end of a word is always stressed):

|              |          |              |                |
|--------------|----------|--------------|----------------|
| <b>å ta</b>  | to take  | <b>å snu</b> | to turn        |
| <b>å kle</b> | to dress | <b>å blø</b> | to bleed       |
| <b>å gli</b> | to slide | <b>å gå</b>  | to walk, to go |
| <b>å bo</b>  | to live  |              |                |

The sign of the infinitive, **å**, is used much in the same way as 'to' in English. Note that when two succeeding infinitives are used in sequence we usually drop the second **å**: **å gi og (å) ta** 'to give and (to) take'.

Almost all Norwegian verbs form their present tense by adding **-r** to the infinitive. The same form is used in all persons, singular and plural:

|      |   |           |   |      |         |   |     |   |      |
|------|---|-----------|---|------|---------|---|-----|---|------|
| jeg  | } | I         | } | read | jeg     | } | I   | } | take |
| du   |   | you       |   | du   | you     |   |     |   |      |
| han  |   | he        |   | han  | he      |   |     |   |      |
| hun  |   | leser she |   | hun  | tar she |   |     |   |      |
| vi   |   | we        |   | vi   | we      |   |     |   |      |
| dere | } | you       | } | read | dere    | } | you | } | take |
| de   |   | they      |   | de   | they    |   |     |   |      |

NOTE: Norwegian also uses the simple present tense where English would use the continuous tense:

**Han kommer.** He comes *or* He is coming.

**Han kjøper og selger klær.** He is buying and selling clothes.

## Vocabulary

|                    |                |
|--------------------|----------------|
| nødvendig          | necessary      |
| å bruke            | to wear        |
| om vinteren        | in winter      |
| alle               | everybody      |
| må                 | must           |
| å lære             | to learn       |
| å lese             | to read        |
| å skrive           | to write       |
| å ønske            | to want        |
| å reise til        | to go to       |
| Italia             | Italy          |
| i sommer           | this summer    |
| å arbeide          | to work        |
| meget              | very           |
| hardt              | hard           |
| å se på            | to watch       |
| fjernsynet         | the television |
| hver               | every          |
| morgenen           | the morning    |
| å reise med bussen | to go by bus   |
| kontoret           | the office     |

**om aftenen**  
**å bli hjemme**

in the evening  
to stay at home

IMITATED PRONUNCIATION aw khö:'-pe, sel'-le, bru:'-ke, treng'-e, pün'-te (say), faw'-re-trek-ke, be-shüt'-te, frü:'-se; aw tah:, kle:, glee, boo:, snu:, blö:, gaw; aw yee, aw tah:, yay, du:, hahn, hun, vee, de:'-re, dee; le:'-ser; tah:r; hahn kom'-mør; hahn khö'-per aw sel'-ler kla:r; nöd-ven'-dee; aw bru:'-ke; om vin'-te-ren; ahl'-le; maw; aw la:'-re; aw le:'-se; aw skree'-ve; aw ön'-ske; aw ray'-se til; ee-tah'-lyah; ee som'-mer; aw ahr'-bay-de; me:'-get; hahrt; aw se: paw; fya:rn'-sü:-ne; va:r; maw'-re-nen; aw ray'-se me: bus'-sen; koon-too:'-re; om ahl'-te-nen; aw blee yem'-me

## Exercise 8

Translate:

- In Norway it's [er det\*] necessary to wear warm clothes in winter.
- Everybody must learn to read and (to) write.
- We want to go to Italy this summer.
- You're working very hard.
- They're watching television.
- She's buying a new dress.
- He lives in Oslo. Every morning he goes [reiser han\*] to the office by bus.
- In the evening he prefers to stay at home.

\* see section 24 on word order – but don't bother to learn it now.

## 9 Questions and answers

In questions the subject (noun or pronoun) is placed after the verb:

**Er din venn engelsk?**  
Is your friend English?



**Snakker de norsk?**

Do they speak Norwegian?

**Leser du norske aviser?**

Are you reading Norwegian newspapers?

**Har dere barn?**

Do you have children?/Have you any children?

'Not' in negative answers is expressed by **ikke**:

**Nei, hun/han er ikke engelsk.**

No, she/he isn't (English).

**Nei, de snakker ikke norsk.**

No, they don't speak Norwegian.

**Nei, jeg leser ikke norske aviser.**

No, I'm not reading Norwegian newspapers.

**Nei, vi har ikke barn.**

No, we don't have children.

Note that there is no Norwegian word corresponding to the English 'do' and 'don't' in questions and negative sentences.

Questions can be either affirmative: **Snakker de norsk?** or negative: **Snakker de ikke norsk?** (Don't they speak Norwegian?).

'Yes' in affirmative answers to affirmative questions is expressed by **ja**:

**Snakker de norsk? Ja, de snakker norsk.**

Do they speak Norwegian? Yes, they speak Norwegian.

'Yes' in affirmative answers to negative questions is expressed by **jo** (the equivalent of the French 'si'):

**Snakker de ikke norsk? Jo, de snakker norsk.**

Don't they speak Norwegian? Yes, they do speak Norwegian.

## Vocabulary

kaldt

å bli

å like

å gå på ski

sammen med

har de (fått)?

cold

to stay

to like

skiing

with

have they got?

IMITATED PRONUNCIATION a:r deen ven eng'-elsk; snah'-ker dee norsk; le'-ser du: nor'-ske ah-vee'-ser; hah:r de: '-re bah:rn; nay hun/hahn a:r ik'-ke eng'-elsk; nay dee snah'-ker ik'-ke norsk; nay yay le: '-ser ik'-ke nors'-ke ah-vee'-ser; nay vee hah:r ik'-ke bah:rn; yah;; yoo;; kahlt; aw blee; aw lee'-ke; aw gaw paw shee; sahm'-men me;; hah:r dee (fot)

## Exercise 9

**A Translate:**

- 1 Is it cold in Norway in winter?
- 2 Do you need warm underwear and a thick sweater?
- 3 Do you want to stay in Oslo?
- 4 Do you like skiing?
- 5 Are your children coming with you?
- 6 Have they got friends here?
- 7 Don't you hear me?

**B Answer the above questions in Norwegian – the first five in the affirmative and the last two in the negative.**

## Vocabulary

|                           |                                    |
|---------------------------|------------------------------------|
| hotellet                  | the hotel                          |
| fru                       | Mrs                                |
| herr                      | Mr                                 |
| i dag                     | today                              |
| bare bra                  | just fine                          |
| svigerinnen               | the sister-in-law                  |
| hele                      | all, whole                         |
| heldig                    | lucky                              |
| sikkert                   | certainly                          |
| å ta seg av               | to take care of                    |
| å vise                    | to show                            |
| rundt i byen              | round the town                     |
| hva med Dem (deg)?        | what about you?                    |
| når det gjelder           | as far as ... is concerned         |
| tanten                    | the aunt                           |
| tremeningen               | the second cousin                  |
| mye                       | a lot                              |
| sammentreffet             | the coincidence                    |
| For et sammentreff!       | What a coincidence!                |
| glad                      | glad                               |
| uken                      | the week                           |
| naturfrelst               | nature-mad                         |
| fotturen                  | the walking tour                   |
| å overleve                | to survive                         |
| helsen                    | the health                         |
| skogen                    | the forest                         |
| luften                    | the air                            |
| det er helse i skogluften | the forest air is<br>good medicine |
| jeg må dessverre          | I'm sorry to                       |
| å forlate                 | to leave                           |
| på gjensyn!               | See you later!                     |

IMITATED PRONUNCIATION hoo-tel'-le; fru:; ha:r; ee-dah'g'; bah'-re brah:; svee-ge-rin'-nen; he'-le; hel'-dee; sik'-kert; aw tah: say ah:v; aw vee'-se; runt ee bü: '-en; vah: me: dem (day); nor de: yel'-ler; tahn'-ten; tre: '-men-ning-en; mü: '-e; sahm'-men-tref-fe; for et sam'-men-tref; glah:; u: '-ken; nah'tu:r' '-frelst; foo: '-tu:-ren; aw aw'-ver-le-ve; hel'-sen; skoo: '-gen; luf'-ten; de a:r hel'-se ee skoo:g'-luf-ten; yay maw des-var'-re; aw for-lah: '-te; paw yen'-sü:n

## Conversation

### Møte på hotellet Meeting at the hotel

- Fru Hansen** God morgen, herr McLeod! Hvordan står det til i dag?  
*Mrs Hansen* Good morning, Mr McLeod! How are you today?
- Herr McLeod** Bare bra. Min kone er i byen og handler sammen med sin norske svigerinne. Så jeg har hele formiddagen for meg selv.  
*Mr McLeod* Just fine. My wife is in town shopping with her Norwegian sister-in-law. So I've got the whole morning to myself.
- Fru Hansen** De er heldig som har familie i Oslo. De tar seg sikkert av dere og viser dere rundt i byen?  
*Mrs Hansen* You're lucky to have family in Oslo. I'm sure they're (lit. They're certainly) taking care of you, showing you round the town?
- Herr McLeod** Ja, det gjør de. Og hva med Dem, fru Hansen? Har De familie i Oslo?  
*Mr McLeod* Yes, they are. And what about you, Mrs Hansen? Do you have family in Oslo?
- Fru Hansen** Jeg er fra Tromsø. Når det gjelder familie, er alt jeg har i Sør-Norge, en tante på Hamar og en tremenning i Fredrikstad. Men min mann og jeg har noen venner på Bygdøy.  
*Mrs Hansen* I'm from Tromsø. As far as family is concerned, all I've got in Southern Norway is an aunt in Hamar and a second cousin in Fredrikstad. But my husband and I have some friends at Bygdøy.
- Herr McLeod** For et sammentreff! Min bror og hans familie bor også på Bygdøy.  
*Mr McLeod* What a coincidence! My brother and his family live at Bygdøy too.

→

**Fru Hansen** Da har de mye å vise dere, Vikingskipene, Folkemuseet, 'Fram' og 'Kon-Tiki' ...  
*Then they have a lot to show you, the Viking ships, the Folk Museum, the 'Fram' and the 'Kon-Tiki' ...*

**Herr McLeod** Ja, jeg vet det. Og jeg er glad for at vi har en hel uke i Oslo. Min bror og hans familie er alle sammen naturfrelst. De vil ta oss med på en tur til Nordmarka. Jeg håper jeg overlever det!  
*Yes, I know. And I'm glad we have a whole week in Oslo. My brother and his family are all nature-mad. They want to take us on a walking tour in Nordmarka. I hope I'll survive!*

**Fru Hansen** Sikkert! Det er helse i skogluften! – Jeg må dessverre forlate Dem, herr McLeod. Ha det godt!  
*Certainly! The forest air is good medicine! – Sorry to leave you, Mr McLeod. Have a good time!*

**Herr McLeod** Takk i like måte, fru Hansen. På gjensyn!  
*The same to you, Mrs Hansen. See you later!*

## Chapter 3

Chapter 3 introduces:

- the imperative form of the verb, used for giving commands and instructions
- questions with question words ('where?', 'how?' etc.)
- some negative expressions ('never', 'no one', etc.)
- the numbers from 0 to 100

## 10 The imperative

The imperative (command form) has the same form as the stem of the verb, i.e. the infinitive less the -e (in verbs ending in a stressed vowel the imperative has the same form as the infinitive):

| <i>Infinitive</i> | <i>Imperative</i>                      |
|-------------------|--|
| å kjøpe           | <b>Kjøp huset!</b> Buy the house!      |
| å selge           | <b>Selg aksjene!</b> Sell the shares!  |
| å vente           | <b>Vent på meg!</b> Wait for me!       |
| å betale          | <b>Betal din gjeld!</b> Pay your debt! |
| å gå              | <b>Gå videre!</b> Go on!               |

When we tell or ask people not to do something, the word **ikke** is placed either immediately after or immediately before the imperative:

|                           |                        |
|---------------------------|------------------------|
| <b>Kjøp ikke huset!</b>   | Don't buy the house!   |
| <b>Ikke kjøp huset!</b>   |                        |
| <b>Selg ikke aksjene!</b> | Don't sell the shares! |
| <b>Ikke selg aksjene!</b> |                        |
| <b>Vent ikke på meg!</b>  | Don't wait for me!     |
| <b>Ikke vent på meg!</b>  |                        |

## Vocabulary

|                   |              |
|-------------------|--------------|
| hardere           | harder       |
| leksjonen, leksen | the lesson   |
| øvelsen           | the exercise |
| å spise           | to eat       |
| din aftensmat     | your supper  |
| å komme tilbake   | to come back |
| å stanse          | to stop      |
| å stå             | to stand     |
| stille            | still        |
| å se på           | to look at   |
| himmelen          | the sky      |

IMITATED PRONUNCIATION khö:p hu:'-se; sel ahk'-she-ne; vent paw may; be-tah:l' deen yel; gaw vee'-de-re; ik'-ke; hah:'-re-re; lek-shoo:'-nen, lek'-sen; ö:'-vel-sen; aw spee'-se; deen ahf'-tens-mah:t; aw kom'-me tilbah:'-ke; aw stahn'-se; aw staw; stil'-le; aw se: paw; him'-me-len

### Exercise 10

A Translate:

- |                       |                     |
|-----------------------|---------------------|
| 1 Work harder!        | 6 Come back!        |
| 2 Read the book!      | 7 Stop the train!   |
| 3 Learn the lesson!   | 8 Take the bus!     |
| 4 Write the exercise! | 9 Stand still!      |
| 5 Eat your supper!    | 10 Look at the sky! |

B Write the last five sentences in the negative form.

## 11 More about questions

In the previous chapter (sec. 9) you learned about the word order in questions: verb before subject (**Snakker de?** Do they speak?). To ask questions you also need to know some question words:

|                   |  |
|-------------------|--|
| hvor?             | Hvor er (den) nærmeste kolonialhandel? |
| where?            | Where is the nearest grocer's?         |
| når?              | Når stenger forretningene?             |
| when?             | When do the shops close?               |
| hvordan?          | Hvordan er disse svinekotlettene?      |
| how?              | How are these pork chops?              |
| hvem?             | Hvem bar først?                        |
| who? whom?        | Who was first?                         |
|                   | Hvem skal jeg spørre?                  |
|                   | Whom shall I ask?                      |
| hvorfor?          | Hvorfor er disse tomatene så dyre?     |
| why?              | Why are these tomatoes so expensive?   |
| hvilken? (common) | Hvilket av eplene vil De ha?           |
| hvilket? (neuter) | Which of the apples do you want?       |
| hvilke? (plural)  | Hvilke epler liker De?                 |
| which? what?      | What apples do you like?               |
| hva?              | Hva ønsker De?                         |
| what?             | What would you like?                   |
| hvor mange?       | Hvor mange kilo?                       |
| how many?         | How many kilos?                        |
| hvor mye?         | Hvor mye koster disse potetene?        |
| how much?         | How much are these potatoes?           |

## Vocabulary

|                 |                  |
|-----------------|------------------|
| å reise (bort)  | to leave         |
| i morgen tidlig | tomorrow morning |
| å ha det bra    | to feel well     |
| det er          | that is          |
| min søster      | my sister        |

|                   |                 |
|-------------------|-----------------|
| å se etter        | to look for     |
| sin sønn          | her son         |
| dette             | this            |
| røkelaks          | smoked salmon   |
| språket           | the language    |
| tysk              | German          |
| fransk            | French          |
| det kommer på ... | it comes to ... |

IMITATED PRONUNCIATION voor a:r (den) na:r-me-ste koo-loo-nyah:l'-hahn-del; nor steng'-er for-ret'-ning-e-ne; voor'-dahn a:r dis'-se vree:-ne-kot-te-let-te-ne; vem vah:r först; vem skahl yay spör'-re; voor'-for a:r dis'-se too-mah:-te-ne saw dü:-re; vil'-ket ah:v ep'-le-ne vil dee hah;; vil'-ke ep'-ler lee'-ker dee; vah: ön'-sker dee; voor mahng'-e khee'-loo; voor mü:-e kos'-ter dis'-se poo'-te:-te-ne; aw ray'-se boort; ee maw'-ren tee'-lee; aw hah: de: brah;; de a:r; meen sös'-ter; aw se: et-ter; seen sön; det'-te; rø:-ke-lahks; spraw'-ke; tüks; frahnsk; de: kom'-mer paw

## Exercise 11

What were the questions which received the ten replies below? The important words are printed in italics.

- 1 Jeg bor *i Bergen*.
- 2 Vi reiser *i morgen tidlig*.
- 3 Jeg har det *bra*.
- 4 Det er *min søster*.
- 5 Hun ser etter *sin sønn*.
- 6 Jeg foretrekker *dette eplet*.
- 7 Det er *røkelaks*.
- 8 Jeg snakker *fire språk*.
- 9 Jeg snakker *engelsk, tysk, fransk og norsk*.
- 10 Det kommer på *67 kroner og 50 øre*.

## 12 More about negatives

You have already seen that 'not' is expressed by **ikke**:

**Nei, de snakker ikke norsk.**

No, they don't speak Norwegian.

Here are some more negatives:

|                                     |             |
|-------------------------------------|-------------|
| aldri                               | never       |
| ingen, ikke noen (common)           | no one, no  |
| intet, ikke noe, ingenting (neuter) | nothing, no |
| ikke lenger                         | no longer   |
| ikke mer                            | no more     |

Examples:

**Han spiser aldri fisk.**

He never eats fish.

**Vi venter ingen (or ikke noen) til middag.**

We expect no one for dinner.

**Det er ikke noe (or ingenting) igjen.**

There is nothing left.

**De røker ikke lenger.**

They no longer smoke.

**De har ikke noen ledig stilling.**

They have no vacant post.

**Vi har ikke mer brød.**

We have no more bread.

## Vocabulary

|              |                     |
|--------------|---------------------|
| å gå på kino | to go to the cinema |
| gjesten      | the guest           |
| landstedet   | the country house   |

IMITATED PRONUNCIATION ahl'-dree; ing'-en, ik'-ke noo'-en; in'-tet, ik'-ke noo'-e; ing'-en-ting; ik'-ke leng'-er; ik'-ke me:r; hahn spee'-ser ahl'-dree fisk; vee ven'-ter ing'-en til mid'-dahg; de: a:r ik'-ke noo'-e i-yen'; dee rø:-ker ik'-ke leng'-er; dee hahr ik'-ke noo'-

en le:'-dee stil'-ling; vee hah:r ik'-ke me:r brø:; aw gaw paw khee:'-noo; yes'-ten; lahn'-ste:-de

## Exercise 12

Translate:

- 1 He never goes to the cinema.
- 2 They have no guests.
- 3 We have no country house.
- 4 I want nothing (I don't want anything).
- 5 You have no more bread.
- 6 It's no longer cold.

## 13 Demonstratives

The most common demonstratives have already been mentioned: **denne, dette, disse** (this, this, these) and **den, det, de** (that, that, those). They are always stressed and can refer to persons, things or ideas:

|                                 |                              |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------|
| <b>denne bilen</b> this car     | <b>den bilen</b> that car    |
| <b>dette huset</b> this house   | <b>det huset</b> that house  |
| <b>disse bøkene</b> these books | <b>de bøkene</b> those books |

**Denne, dette, disse** refer to something very near – and **den, det, de** to something at a certain distance from the speaker. To emphasise something near we sometimes add **her** (here); to emphasise something more remote we add **der** (there). The demonstratives can be used either before a noun or alone:

**Denne bilen (her) er min, men den (der) tilhører min nabo.**

This car is mine, but that one belongs to my neighbour.

Note that the English word 'one' is not translated:

**Hvilket rom ønsker De? Jeg ønsker dette.**

Which room would you like? I'd like this one.

Remember that the **-e** form of the adjective (sec. 7) is used after the demonstrative pronouns: **denne nye dressen, dette store rommet, disse lange bordene**. Note also that the noun following the adjective normally appears in the definite form (as in the examples given above).

## Vocabulary

|                      |                   |
|----------------------|-------------------|
| <b>uforglemmelig</b> | unforgettable     |
| <b>moderne</b>       | fashionable       |
| <b>å mene</b>        | to mean           |
| <b>mye bedre</b>     | much better       |
| <b>jeg vil ha</b>    | I'd like          |
| <b>brødet</b>        | the loaf of bread |
| <b>kaken</b>         | the cake          |

IMITATED PRONUNCIATION den'-ne bee'-len; det'-te hu:'-se; dis'-se bö:'-ke-ne; den bee'-len; de hu:'-se; dee bö:-'ke'ne; den'-ne bee'-len (ha:r) a:r meen men den (da:r) til'-hö-rer meen nah:'-boo; vil'-ket room öns'-ker dee; yay öns'-ker det'-te; den'-ne nü:'-e dres'-sen; det'-te stoo:'-re room'-me; dis'-se lang'-e boo:'-re-ne; u-for-glem'-me-lee; moo-da:r'-ne; aw me:'-ne; mü'-e be:-dre; yay vil hah;; brø:'-e; kah:'-ken

## Exercise 13

Translate, using the right demonstrative pronouns:

- 1 that pleasant evening
- 2 this warm summer
- 3 those unforgettable days
- 4 that dangerous crossroads
- 5 these blue mountains
- 6 this fashionable ship
- 7 'Don't buy that book!' 'What book do you mean?'  
'I mean that one. This one is much better.'
- 8 I'd like two loaves of bread: this one and that one.  
And three cakes: two of these and one of those.



## 14 The numbers 1 to 100

The numbers 1 to 29 are:

|    |                   |    |                               |
|----|-------------------|----|-------------------------------|
| 1  | <b>en, ett</b>    | 16 | <b>seksten</b>                |
| 2  | <b>to</b>         | 17 | <b>sytten</b>                 |
| 3  | <b>tre</b>        | 18 | <b>atten</b>                  |
| 4  | <b>fire</b>       | 19 | <b>nitten</b>                 |
| 5  | <b>fem</b>        | 20 | <b>tyve (tjue*)</b>           |
| 6  | <b>seks</b>       | 21 | <b>enogtyve (tjueen*)</b>     |
| 7  | <b>syv (sju*)</b> | 22 | <b>toogtyve (tjueto*)</b>     |
| 8  | <b>åtte</b>       | 23 | <b>treogtyve (tjuetre*)</b>   |
| 9  | <b>ni</b>         | 24 | <b>fireogtyve (tjuefire*)</b> |
| 10 | <b>ti</b>         | 25 | <b>femogtyve (tjuefem*)</b>   |
| 11 | <b>elleve</b>     | 26 | <b>seksogtyve (tjueseks*)</b> |
| 12 | <b>tolv</b>       | 27 | <b>syvogtyve (tjuesju*)</b>   |
| 13 | <b>tretten</b>    | 28 | <b>åtteogtyve (tjueåtte*)</b> |
| 14 | <b>fjorten</b>    | 29 | <b>niogtyve (tjueni*)</b>     |
| 15 | <b>femten</b>     |    |                               |

The tens from 30 to 100 are:

|    |                         |     |                    |
|----|-------------------------|-----|--------------------|
| 30 | <b>tredve (tretti*)</b> | 70  | <b>sytti</b>       |
| 40 | <b>førti</b>            | 80  | <b>åtti</b>        |
| 50 | <b>femti</b>            | 90  | <b>nitti</b>       |
| 60 | <b>seksti</b>           | 100 | <b>(ett)hundre</b> |

By following the patterns shown for 21 to 29 you will be able to form any number between 30 and 100. In the traditional method of counting still used by the majority of Norwegians, the small numbers precede the units of ten. The two are written in one word and linked by **og**: **toogtredve** (32), **femogførti** (45) etc.

But in the new method of counting introduced in schools, broadcasting etc. by decree of 1951, the tens precede the small numbers, and the two are written in one word: **tjueen** (21), **trettito** (32), **førtifem** (45) etc. The special official forms used in this method are marked above with an asterisk.

The Norwegian word for 'zero' is **null**.

IMITATED PRONUNCIATION e:n, e:t; too;; tre;; fee'-re; fem; seks; sü:v, shu;; of'-te; nee; tee; el'-ve; tol; tret'-ten; fyoor'-ten; fem'-ten; say'-sten; søt'-ten; aht'-ten; nit'-ten; tü:'ve, khu:'-e; e:n'-o-tü:-ve, khu-e-e:n'; too'-o-tü:'-ve, khu-e-too'; tre'-o-tü:-ve, khu-e-tre'; feer'-o-tü:-ve, khu-e-fee'-re; fem'-o-tü:-ve, khu-e-fem'; seks'-o-tü:-ve, khu-e-seks'; sü:v'-o-tü:-ve; khu-e-shu'; of'-te-o-tü:-ve, khu-e-of-te; nee'-o-tü:-ve, khu-e-nee'; tred'-ve, tret'-tee; för'-tee; fem'-tee; seks'-tee; søt'-tee; of'-tee; nit'-tee; (et) hun'dre; nul

## Exercise 14

Complete the following sums, writing all numbers in words:

- |                  |                        |
|------------------|------------------------|
| a) $2 + 9 = *$   | g) $33 \times 3 = ***$ |
| b) $5 + 7 =$     | h) $100 + 25 = ****$   |
| c) $15 - 9 = **$ | i) $15 \times 5 =$     |
| d) $22 + 44 =$   | j) $68 \div 4 =$       |
| e) $23 - 10 =$   | k) $6 \times 8 =$      |
| f) $56 - 32 =$   | l) $98 \div 14 =$      |

\* Read: **2 og** (aw) **9 er ...**

\*\* Read: **15 minus** (mee'-nus) **9 er ...**

\*\*\* Read: **33 ganger** (gahng'-er) **3 er ...**

\*\*\*\* Read: **100 dividert med** (dee-vee-de:r'- me:) **25 er ...** (The Norwegians use : for division, not ÷)

## Vocabulary

**delikatesseforretningen**

the delicatessen

**kjøpmannen**

the shopkeeper

**Vær så god!**

Can I help you?

**frue**

madam

**landturen**

the picnic

**vi skal på landtur**

we're going on a picnic

**jeg vil gjerne ha**

I'd like

|                      |   |
|----------------------|---|
| smørbrødpålegget     | the cooked meats, sandwich fillings, etc. |
| skinken              | the ham                                   |
| skinkerullen         | the luncheon meat                         |
| utmerket             | excellent                                 |
| Hvor mye koster det? | How much is it?                           |
| kiloen               | the kilo                                  |
| skiven               | the slice                                 |
| omtrent              | about                                     |
| så tykk              | that thick                                |
| spesialiteten        | the speciality                            |
| litt                 | some, a little                            |
| spekeskinken         | the cured ham                             |
| spekepølsen          | the cured sausage                         |
| fenalåret            | the cured leg of lamb                     |
| la meg få nok        | let me have enough                        |
| å klare seg          | to do, be enough                          |
| har De lyst til?     | would you like?                           |
| å prøve              | to try                                    |
| røkelaksen           | the smoked salmon                         |
| rakørreten           | the corned trout                          |
| laget av nyfisket    | made from freshly caught                  |
| å rense              | to clean                                  |
| å salte              | to salt                                   |
| å legge (ned)        | to arrange                                |
| trebutten            | the small wooden tub                      |
| minst                | at least                                  |
| før                  | before                                    |
| å servere            | to serve                                  |
| å smake              | to taste                                  |
| lukten               | the smell                                 |
| kanskje              | perhaps                                   |
| alt                  | all                                       |
| det koster           | it comes to                               |
| kassen               | the cash desk                             |

IMITATED PRONUNCIATION de-lee-kah-tes'-se-for-ret'-ning-en; khöp'-mahn-nen; va:r saw goo:'; fru:-e; lahn'-tu:-ren; vee skahl paw' lahn'-tu:r; yay vil ya:r'-ne hah:; smör'-brö-paw-leg'-ge; shin'-ken; shin'-ke-rul-len; u:t-mar-ke; voor mü:'-e kos'-ter de:; khee'-loo-en; shee'-ven; om-trent'; saw tük; spe-syah-lee-te:'-ten; lit; spe:'-ke-shin-ken; spe:'-ke-pöl-sen; fe:-nah:-law'-re; lah: may faw; nok; aw klah:'-re say; hah:r dee lüst til; aw prö:'-ve; rö:'-ke-lahk-sen; rah:k'-ör-re-ten; lah:'-get ah:v; nü:'-fis-ke; aw ren'-se; aw sahl'-te; aw leg'-ge ne:d; tre:'-but-ten; minst; fö:r; aw sar-ve:'-re; aw smah:'-ke; look'-ten; kahn'-she; ahl;t; de: kos'-ter; kahs'-sen

## Conversation

### I delikatesseforretningen

*In the delicatessen*

**Kjøpmannen** Vær så god, frue!

*Shopkeeper Can I help you, madam?*

**Fru McLeod** Vi skal på landtur, og jeg vil gjerne ha noe riktig godt smørbrødpålegg.

*We're going on a picnic, and I'd like some very good cooked meats or sandwich fillings.*

**Kjøpmannen** Jeg har en meget fin skinke, og denne skinkerullen er også utmerket.

*I've a very fine ham, and this luncheon meat is excellent too.*

**Fru McLeod** Hvor mye koster det?

*How much is it?*

**Kjøpmannen** Skinken koster 197 kroner kiloen og skinkerullen 190 kroner. Hvor mye skal De ha?

*The ham is 197 kroner a kilo and the luncheon meat 190. How much would you like?*

**Fru McLeod** Jeg skal ha fire skiver av skinken og fire skiver av skinkerullen. Omtrent så tykke.

*I'd like four slices of the ham and four slices of the luncheon meat. About that thick.*

→

**Kjøpmannen** Vær så god, frue. Hva sier De om noen norske spesialiteter, litt spekeskinke eller spekepølse til å ha på smørbrød? Eller litt fenalår?

*Here you are, madam. What about some Norwegian specialities, some cured ham or cured sausage to put in sandwiches? Or some cured leg of lamb?*

**Fru McLeod** La meg få noen tynne skiver spekeskinke, er De snill.  
*Let me have some thin slices of cured ham, please.*

**Kjøpmannen** Er det nok, frue?  
*Is that enough, madam?*

**Fru McLeod** Takk, det klarer seg.  
*Thank you, that'll do.*

**Kjøpmannen** Har De lyst til å prøve noen andre norske spesialiteter, røkelaks eller rakørret?  
*Would you like to try some other Norwegian specialities, smoked salmon or corned trout?*

**Fru McLeod** Jeg vil ha to skiver av røkelaksen. Men hva er rakørret?  
*I'd like two slices of the smoked salmon. But what is corned trout?*

**Kjøpmannen** Rakørret blir laget av nyfisket ørret. Den blir rensed og saltet og lagt i en trebutt i minst tre måneder før den blir servert. Har De lyst til å smake på den, frue?  
*Corned trout is made from freshly caught trout. It's cleaned and salted and arranged in a small wooden tub for at least three months before it is served. Would you like to taste it, madam?*

**Fru McLeod** Nei, takk! Jeg klarer meg med lukten! En annen gang, kanskje.  
*No, thank you! The smell is enough for me! Some other time perhaps.*

**Kjøpmannen** Javel, frue. Er det alt?  
*All right, madam. Is that all?*

**Fru McLeod** Ja, jeg tror det. Hvor mye kommer det på til sammen?  
*Yes, I think so. How much does it all come to?*

**Kjøpmannen** Det blir 55 kroner og 90 øre. Vennligst betal i kassen!  
*It's 55 kroner and 90 øre. Would you please pay at the cash desk.*

**Fru McLeod** Mange takk! Adjø!  
*Thank you very much. Goodbye!*

**Kjøpmannen** Adjø, frue, og ha en hyggelig landtur!  
*Goodbye, madam, and have a pleasant picnic!*

## Chapter 4

This chapter covers:

- the possessive adjectives ('my', 'your', etc.) and the possessive pronouns ('mine', 'yours', etc.)
- some variations on the usual adjective endings
- the comparative and superlative forms of adjectives, including some common irregular ones
- more personal pronouns: the object forms 'me', 'him', etc.
- how to tell the time in Norwegian

### 15 Possessive adjectives

The possessive adjectives are:

|                                     |   |      |              |   |       |
|-------------------------------------|---|------|--------------|---|-------|
| <b>min</b> ( <i>common sing.</i> )  | } | my   | <b>vår</b>   | } | our   |
| <b>mitt</b> ( <i>neuter sing.</i> ) |   |      | <b>vårt</b>  |   |       |
| <b>mine</b> ( <i>plural</i> )       |   |      | <b>våre</b>  |   |       |
| <b>din</b>                          | } | your | <b>deres</b> |   | your  |
| <b>ditt</b>                         |   |      |              |   |       |
| <b>dine</b>                         |   |      |              |   |       |
| <b>Deres</b> ( <i>formal</i> )      |   | your |              |   |       |
| <b>dens</b> ( <i>common sing.</i> ) | } | its  |              |   |       |
| <b>dets</b> ( <i>neuter sing.</i> ) |   |      |              |   |       |
| <b>hans</b>                         |   | his  |              |   |       |
| <b>hennes</b>                       |   | her  | <b>deres</b> |   | their |

**Min**, **din** and **vår** agree in gender and number with the noun to which they refer (that is, with the thing possessed, not with the owner):

**min bil**  
**din bil**  
**vår bil**

**mitt hus**  
**ditt hus**  
**vårt hus**

**mine naboer**  
**dine naboer**  
**våre naboer**

The other possessives remain unchanged in the neuter singular and in the plural.

Instead of **min bil**, **ditt hus**, **hennes bror**, **våre naboer**, etc. we often say: **bilen min**, **huset ditt**, **broren hennes**, **naboene våre**, etc. In the third person only, the reflexive **sin** is used instead of **hans**, **hennes**, **dens**, **dets** and **deres** when referring back to the subject of the clause:

**Hun kommer i sin bil/  
bilen sin.**

She comes in her car.

But: **Hennes bil er rød.**

Her car is red.

**Han kommer i sin bil/  
bilen sin.**

He comes in his car.

But: **Hans bil er blå.**

His car is blue.

**Han tar sin bil/bilen sin.**

He takes his (own) car.

But: **Han tar hans bil/  
bilen hans.**

He takes his (i.e. another person's) car.

**Sin** agrees in gender and number with the noun in the same way as **min** and **din**:

**Han selger sitt hus/huset sitt.** He sells his house.

**De selger sine hus/husene sine.** They sell their houses.

Note that the possessive pronouns are normally omitted in connection with parts of the body, clothes etc.:

**Han rister på hodet.**

He shakes his head.

**Du må ha tørre sokker på bena og et tykt skjerf rundt halsen.**

You must have dry socks on your feet and a thick scarf around your neck.

After possessives, a following adjective takes the **-e** form (sec. 7):

**Hvor er min lille hund?**

Where is my little dog?

**Hun har fått en flekk på sin nye kjole.**

She's got a stain on her new dress.

## Vocabulary

|                                 |                          |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------|
| <b>forsinket</b>                | late                     |
| <b>jeg må</b>                   | I have to                |
| <b>å levere</b>                 | to deliver               |
| <b>bagasjen</b>                 | the luggage              |
| <b>forretningsforbindelsene</b> | the business associates  |
| <b>å besøke</b>                 | to visit                 |
| <b>kjæresten</b>                | the boyfriend/girlfriend |
| <b>mannskapet</b>               | the crew                 |
| <b>å vaske</b>                  | to wash                  |

IMITATED PRONUNCIATION meen beel, mit hu:s, mee'-ne nah:'-boo-er; deen beel, dit hu:s, dee'-ne nah'-boo-er; vavr beel, vort hu:s; vav'-re nah:'-boo-er; bee'-len meen, hu:'-se dit, broo:'-ren hen'-nes, nah:'-boo-e-ne vav'-re; hahns, hen'-nes, dens, dets, de:'-res; seen; hun kom'-mer ee seen beel; hen'-nes beel a:r rö; hahn kom'-mer ee seen beel; hahns beel a:r blaw; hahn tah:r seen beel/bee'-len seen; hahn tah:r hahns beel/bee'-len hahns; hahn sel'-ler sit hu:s/hu:'-se sit; dee sel'-ler see'-ne hu:s/hu:'-se-ne; hahn ris'-ter paw hoo:'-de; du: maw hah: tör'-re sok'-ker paw be:'-nah aw et tükt sharf runt hah'-sen; voor a:r meen lil'-le hun; hun hahr fot e:n flek paw seen nü:-e kho:'-le; for-sin'-ket; yay maw; aw le-ve:'-re; bah-gah:'-shen; for-ret'-nings-for-bin'-nel-se-ne; aw be-sö:'-ke; kha:'-res-ten; mahn'-skah:-pe; aw vahs'-ke

## Exercise 15

Translate:

- 1 Where are my blue shirt, my red tie, my brown socks?
- 2 This is your wallet, your passport and your tickets.

- 3 Our plane is late.\*
- 4 They have to deliver their suitcases.\*
- 5 Their luggage is in the plane.\*
- 6 His business associates are expecting him.
- 7 She is visiting her boyfriend.\*
- 8 The plane and its crew.
- 9 Wash your hands!\*\*\*
- 10 He has a hat on his head.\*\*

\* Give both alternatives (model: min bil – bilen min)

\*\* Drop the possessive adjective.

## 16 Possessive pronouns

Instead of saying 'it is my car', using the possessive adjective 'my', we can say 'the car is mine', using the possessive pronoun 'mine'.

In Norwegian the possessive pronouns have the same forms as the possessive adjectives, and **min, din, sin, vår** agree in the same way with the noun to which they refer.

Examples:

**Denne bilen er min, den er deres.**

This car is mine, that one is theirs.

**Det bildet er ditt.**

That picture is yours.

**De koffertene er våre.**

Those suitcases are ours.

**Dette huset er hennes.**

This house is hers.

Note that the English expression 'He is a friend of mine' must be translated **Han er en venn av meg** (lit. 'He is a friend of me').

## Vocabulary

|                |            |
|----------------|------------|
| <b>setet</b>   | the seat   |
| <b>alt</b>     | everything |
| <b>feilen*</b> | the fault  |

\* **Feil** is an irregular common gender noun, in that it does not have an indefinite plural: '(some) faults' **feil**, 'the faults' **feilene**.

IMITATED PRONUNCIATION den'-ne bee'-len a:r meen, den a:r de:'-res; de: bil'-de a:r dit; dee koof'-fer-te-ne a:r vaw'-re; det'-te hu:'se a:r hen'-nes; hahn a:r e:n ven ah:v may; se:'-te; ahlt; fay'-len

### Exercise 16

Translate:

- 1 That seat is hers, this one is yours.
- 2 These newspapers are ours, those are theirs.
- 3 Nothing in this house is his, everything is mine.
- 4 We have our faults, and you have yours.

## 17 More about adjectives

Adjectives ending in **-el**, **-en** or **-er** drop their **-e-** before the ending in the plural:

| Common       | Neuter        | Plural        |                 |
|--------------|---------------|---------------|-----------------|
| <b>enkel</b> | <b>enkelt</b> | <b>enkle</b>  | simple          |
| <b>våken</b> | <b>våkent</b> | <b>våkene</b> | awake, watchful |
| <b>mager</b> | <b>magert</b> | <b>magre</b>  | thin, lean      |

Some adjectives ending in **-sk**, **-d**, **-s** and **-e** have no **-t** in the neuter singular:

|                             |                    |
|-----------------------------|--------------------|
| <b>et norsk skip</b>        | a Norwegian ship   |
| <b>et fremmed språk</b>     | a foreign language |
| <b>et felles anliggende</b> | a joint concern    |
| <b>et fristende tilbud</b>  | a tempting offer   |

But note these adjectives which do add a **-t** in the neuter:

|                    |              |
|--------------------|--------------|
| <b>friskt smør</b> | fresh butter |
| <b>ferskt brød</b> | fresh bread  |

Note also that adjectives ending in **-s** or **-e** have no additional ending in the plural:

|                             |                 |
|-----------------------------|-----------------|
| <b>felles anstrengelser</b> | joint efforts   |
| <b>fristende tilbud</b>     | tempting offers |

## Vocabulary

|                        |               |
|------------------------|---------------|
| <b>lammekoteletten</b> | the lamb chop |
| <b>flagget</b>         | the flag      |
| <b>moderne</b>         | modern        |

IMITATED PRONUNCIATION en'-kel, en'-kelt, en'-kle; vaw'-ken, vaw'-kent, vaw'-kne; mah:'-ger, mah:'-gert, mah:'-gre; et norsk sheep; et frem'-med sprawk; et fel'-les ahn-lig'-ge-ne; et fris-'te-ne til'-bu:d; friskt smö:r; farskt brö:; fel'-les ahn'-streng-el-ser; fris-'te-ne til'-bu:d; lahm'-me-kot-te-let-ten; flahg'-ge; moo-da:r'-ne

### Exercise 17

Translate:

- 1 simple clothes
- 2 watchful eyes
- 3 lean lamb chops
- 4 a Norwegian flag, Norwegian flags
- 5 a foreign country, foreign countries
- 6 a joint concern, joint concerns
- 7 a modern house, modern houses



## 18A Comparison of adjectives

In Norwegian, comparisons are usually made by adding **-ere** (or **-re**) in the comparative and **-est** (or **-st**) in the superlative:

|                                    |                               |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| <b>høy – høyere – høyest</b>       | { tall – taller – tallest     |
|                                    | { high – higher – highest     |
| <b>lav – lavere – lavest</b>       | low – lower – lowest          |
| <b>pen – penere – penest</b>       | pretty – prettier – prettiest |
| <b>stygg – styggere – styggest</b> | ugly – uglier – ugliest       |

Examples:

**Pål er høy.**

Pål is tall.

**Men Per er høyere.**

But Per is taller.

**Og Espen er den høyeste i familien.**

And Espen is the tallest in the family.

**Den veien er kort.**

That road is short.

**Den veien er kortere enn den første.**

That road is shorter than the first one.

**Men denne veien er den korteste av dem alle.**

But this road is the shortest of them all.

## 18B Irregular comparison of adjectives

Some adjectives have irregular comparison, changing their stem (or stem vowel) in the comparative and in the superlative:

|                               |                            |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------|
| <b>god – bedre – best</b>     | good – better – best       |
| <b>dårlig – verre – verst</b> | bad – worse – worst        |
| <b>ung – yngre – yngst</b>    | young – younger – youngest |
| <b>gammel – eldre – eldst</b> | old – older – oldest       |
| <b>liten – mindre – minst</b> | small – smaller – smallest |
| <b>stor – større – størst</b> | big – bigger – biggest     |
| <b>få – færre – færrest</b>   | few – fewer – fewest       |
| <b>mange – flere – flest</b>  | many – more – most         |
| <b>lang – lengre – lengst</b> | long – longer – longest    |

Adjectives of several syllables (and participles of verbs used as adjectives) form their comparative and superlative with **mer** 'more' and **mest** 'most', as in English:

|  |
|--|
| <b>problematisk – mer problematisk – mest problematisk</b> |
| problematic – more problematic – most problematic          |
| <b>spennende – mer spennende – mest spennende</b>          |
| exciting – more exciting – most exciting                   |
| <b>fornøyd – mer fornøyd – mest fornøyd</b>                |
| satisfied – more satisfied – most satisfied                |

## Vocabulary

|                      |                   |
|----------------------|-------------------|
| <b>klassen</b>       | the class         |
| <b>Danmark</b>       | Denmark           |
| <b>Sverige</b>       | Sweden            |
| <b>skandinavisk</b>  | Scandinavian      |
| <b>fjelltoppen</b>   | the mountain peak |
| <b>underholdende</b> | entertaining      |
| <b>biblioteket</b>   | the library       |

IMITATED PRONUNCIATION høy, høy'-e-re, høy'-est; lah:v, lah'-ve-re, lah'-vest, pe:n, pe'-ne-re, pe'-nest; stüg, stüg'-ge-re, stüg'-gest; pawl a:r høy; men pe:r a:r høy'-e-re; aw es'-pen a:r den høy'-es-te ee fah-mee'-lyen; den vay'-en a:r kort; den vay'-en a:r kor'-te-re en den för'-ste; men den'-ne vay'-en a:r den kor'-te-ste ah:v dem ahl'-le; goo; be'-dre, best; dawr'-lee, var'-re, varst; oong, üng'-re, üngst; gahm'-mel, el'dre, elst; lee'-ten, min'-dre, minst; stoo:r, stör'-re, störst; faw, far'-re, far'-rest; mahng'-e, fle'-re, fle:st; lahng, leng'-re, lengst; me:r, me:st; proob-le-mah: '-tisk; spen'-nen-de; for-nöyd'; klahs'-sen; dahn'-mark; sva'-rye; skahn-dee-nah: '-visk fyel'-toppen; un'-ner-hol-le-ne; bib-lyoo-te: '-ke

## Exercise 18

Translate:

- 1 Kate is younger than Marit. But Berit is the youngest girl in the class.
- 2 Norway is larger than Denmark. But Sweden is the largest of the three Scandinavian countries.
- 3 Skagastølstind is higher than Snøhetta. But Galdhøpiggen is the highest mountain peak in Norway.
- 4 Trondheimsfjorden is longer than Oslofjorden. But Sognefjorden is the longest of them all.
- 5 This book is more entertaining than that one. But that one is the most entertaining book I have in my library.

## 19 Object forms of the personal pronouns

These are the forms of the personal pronouns which are used as a direct or indirect object (e.g. me, them) and after a preposition (e.g. for me, to them):

|                  |     |             |      |
|------------------|-----|-------------|------|
| <b>meg</b>       | me  | <b>oss</b>  | us   |
| <b>deg</b>       | you | <b>dere</b> | you  |
| <b>Dem</b>       | you |             |      |
| <b>ham (han)</b> | him |             |      |
| <b>henne</b>     | her | <b>dem</b>  | them |
| <b>den</b>       |     |             |      |
| <b>det</b>       | it  |             |      |

Examples:

**Unnskyld meg!** Excuse me!

**Kan jeg hjelpe deg?** Can I help you?

**Kan De gi oss en kvittering?** Can you give us a receipt?

**Fortell dem hele historien!** Tell them the whole story!

**Jeg skriver et brev til henne.** I'm writing a letter to her.  
**Du må stole på ham.** You have to trust him.

The possessive forms of the personal pronouns (**Deres, hans, hennes, dens, dets, deres**) were described in secs 15 and 16.

The reflexive pronoun **seg** is used in the third person instead of **ham, henne, den, det, dem** when referring back to the subject of the clause. Look at the difference between:

**Han ber sin venn om å gjemme seg.**  
He asks his friend to hide (himself).

**Han ber sin venn om å gjemme ham.**  
He asks his friend to hide him.

## Vocabulary

|                                    |                             |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <b>armbåndet</b>                   | the bracelet                |
| <b>å glemme</b>                    | to forget                   |
| <b>å takke</b>                     | to thank                    |
| <b>å skrive om</b>                 | to write about              |
| <b>vær så snill (å)</b>            | please                      |
| <b>varene</b>                      | the goods                   |
| <b>å sende</b>                     | to send                     |
| <b>så snart det passer for ham</b> | at his earliest convenience |
| <b>en gang i uken</b>              | once a week                 |

IMITATED PRONUNCIATION un'-shül may; kahn yay yel'-pe day; kahn dee yee os en kvit-te:'-ring; for-tel dem he:'-le his-too:'-ryen; yay skree'-ver et bre:v til hen'-ne; du: maw stoo:'-le paw hahm; hahn ber: seen ven om aw yem'-me say/hahm; ahrm'-bon-ne; aw glem'-me; aw tahk'-ke; aw skree'-ve om; va:r saw snil (aw); vah:'-re-ne; aw sen'-ne; saw snah:rt de: pahs'-ser for hahm; en gang ee u:'-ken

## Exercise 19

Translate:

- 1 Give her a bracelet!
- 2 Don't forget to thank him for it.
- 3 Please write to me about it.
- 4 Her mother is waiting for her at the station.
- 5 Please send us the goods at your earliest convenience.
- 6 I visit them once a week.

## 20 Time

|   |                                 |
|---|---------------------------------|
| Hva (or Hvor mange) er klokken?         | What time is it?                |
| Kan De si meg hva riktig klokke er?     | Can you tell me the right time? |
| Klokken er ti.                          | It's ten o'clock.               |
| Den er ti.                              | It's ten.                       |
| Den er ett minutt over ti.              | It's one minute past ten.       |
| Den er fem over ti.                     | It's five past ten.             |
| Den er kvart (or et kvarter) over ti.   | It's a quarter past ten.        |
| Den er ti på halv elleve.               | It's twenty past ten.           |
| Den er halv elleve.                     | It's half past ten.             |
| Den er fem over halv elleve.            | It's twenty-five to eleven.     |
| Den er kvart (or et kvarter) på elleve. | It's a quarter to eleven.       |
| Den er fem på elleve.                   | It's five to eleven.            |
| Ved hvilket klokkeslett?                | At what time?                   |
| Klokken tolv middag.                    | At (twelve o'clock) midday.     |
| Klokken tolv midnatt.                   | At (twelve o'clock) midnight.   |
| Klokken ni om morgenen.                 | At nine o'clock in the morning. |

**Klokken ni om kvelden** (or **aftenen**). At nine o'clock in the evening.

**Klokken to om ettermiddagen.** At two o'clock in the afternoon.

The abbreviation **kl** is used for 'o'clock': **kl 2** '2 o'clock', **kl 8** '8 o'clock' etc.

IMITATED PRONUNCIATION vah: (vor mahng'-e) a:r klok'-ken; kahn dee see may vah: rik'-tee klok'-ke a:r; klok'-ken a:r tee; den a:r tee; et minut' aw'-ver tee; fem aw'-ver tee;; kvahrt (et kvahr-te:r') aw'-ver tee; tee paw hahl el'-ve; hahl el'-ve; fem aw'-ver hahl el'-ve; kvahrt (et kvahr-te:r') paw el'-ve; fem paw el'-ve; ve: vil'-ket klok'-ke-slet; klok'-ken tol mid'-dah:g; mid'-naht; klok'-ken nee om maw'-re-nen; om kvel'-len (ahf'-te-nen); klok'-ken too: om et'-termid-dah:-gen

## Exercise 20

Write the following times in words:

- a) 2.15, 2.30, 2.45, 3.00
- b) 3.05, 3.20, 3.40, 3.55
- c) 4.01, 4.12, 4.26, 4.37

## Vocabulary

|              |                       |
|--------------|-----------------------|
| klærne       | the clothes           |
| ekspeditøren | the shop assistant    |
| ferien       | the holiday           |
| neste        | next                  |
| uken         | the week              |
| sjøreisen    | the cruise            |
| Nord-Norge   | Northern Norway       |
| Hurtigruten  | the Coastal Express   |
| reisen       | the journey, the trip |
| sportsklærne | the sportswear        |
| vanlig       | ordinary              |
| ytterklærne  | the outdoor clothes   |
| nokså        | rather                |

|                   |                     |
|-------------------|---------------------|
| der oppe          | up there            |
| takket være       | thanks to           |
| Golfstrømmen      | the Gulf Stream     |
| kystklimaet       | the coastal climate |
| temmelig          | fairly              |
| mildt             | mild                |
| uten              | without             |
| isbjørnen         | the polar bear      |
| nok               | enough              |
| badevær           | swimming weather    |
| fjorden           | the fjord           |
| på denne tiden    | at this time        |
| nord              | north               |
| å skifte          | to change           |
| fort              | quickly             |
| hva slags         | what kind of        |
| å anbefale        | to recommend        |
| ekstra            | extra               |
| undertøyet        | the underwear       |
| strømpebuksene    | the tights          |
| undertøyen        | the vest            |
| sportsskjorten    | the sports shirt    |
| genseren          | the sweater         |
| nordavinden       | the north wind      |
| boblejakken       | the quilted anorak  |
| den forede kappen | the lined overcoat  |
| å se ut som       | to look like        |
| forresten         | besides             |
| å ha råd til      | to afford           |
| å komme med       | to come up with     |
| forslaget         | the suggestion      |
| valget            | the choice          |
| selvfølgelig      | of course           |
| å sette pris på   | to appreciate       |
| javel             | (yes) certainly     |

IMITATED PRONUNCIATION kla:r'-ne; eks-pe-dee-tö:'-ren; fe-ryen; nes'-te; u:'-ken; shö:'-ray-sen; noo:r'-nor-ge; hur'-tee-ru:-ten; ray'-sen; sports'-kla:r-ne; vah:n'-lee; üt'-ter'-kla:r-ne; nok'-saw; da:r op'-pe; tahk'-ket va:'-re; golf'-ström-men; khüst'-klee-mah-e; tem'-me-lee; milt; u:'-ten; ees'-byö:r-nen; nok; bah:'-de-var; fyoo:'-ren; paw den'-ne tee'-den; noo:r; aw shif'-te; foort; vah: slahgs; aw ahn'-be-fah:-le; ek'-strah; un'-ner-töy-e; ström'-pe-book-se-ne; un'-ner-

tröy-en; sports'-shoor-ten; gen'-se-ren; noo'-rah-vin-nen; bob'-le-yahk-ken; den foo:'-re-de kahp'-pen; aw se: u:t som; for-res'-ten; aw hah: raw til; aw kom'-mæ me:; för'-slah-ge; vahl'-ge; sel-föl'-ge-lee; aw set'-te prees paw; yah:-vel

## Conversation

### Vi kjøper klær Buying clothes

**Ekspeditøren** Hva kan jeg hjelpe Dem med?  
*Shop assistant* What can I do for you?

**Fru McLeod** Min mann og jeg er på ferie i Norge. I neste uke skal vi på en sjøreise til Nord-Norge med Hurtigruten, og vi trenger noen varme klær til å ha på under reisen.  
*My husband and I are on holiday in Norway. Next week we are going on a cruise to Northern Norway with the Coastal Express, and we need some warm clothes to wear on the trip.*

**Ekspeditøren** Vil De ha sportsklær eller vanlige ytterklær, frue?  
*Would you like sportswear or ordinary outdoor clothes, madam?*

**Fru McLeod** Vi har ikke vært i Nord-Norge før. Det er nokså kaldt der oppe, ikke sant?  
*We haven't been to Northern Norway before. It's rather cold up there, isn't it?*

**Ekspeditøren** Nei, takket være Golfstrømmen er kystklimaet temmelig mildt. Men uten den ville det sikkert vært isbjørner i gatene, og vi ville vært eskimoer alle sammen!  
*No, thanks to the Gulf Stream the coastal climate is fairly mild. But without it there would certainly be polar bears in the streets and we'd all be Eskimos!*



**Fru McLeod** Vi tok bare med oss vanlige sommerklær.  
Det er vel ikke nok?

*We just brought ordinary summer clothes. That won't be enough, will it?*

**Ekspeditøren** Jeg tror ikke det, frue. Det kan riktignok være badevær inne i fjordene på denne tiden av året. Men så langt nord skifter klimaet veldig fort.

*I think it won't, madam. It's true it can be warm enough to swim (lit. There can certainly be swimming weather) in the fjords at this time of the year. But so far north the climate changes very quickly.*

**Fru McLeod** Hva slags klær anbefaler De oss da å kjøpe?

*So, what kind of clothes would you recommend us to buy?*

**Ekspeditøren** Først og fremst tror jeg dere vil trenge noe ekstra varmt undertøy, noen lange strømpebukser og en trøye, en sportsskjorte og en tykk genser. Og for å beskytte dere mot den kalde nordavinden, ville jeg anbefale en boblejakke eller en foret kappe ...

*First of all I think you'll need some extra warm underwear, some long tights and a vest, a sports shirt and a thick sweater. And to protect you against the cold north wind I'd recommend a quilted anorak or a lined overcoat ...*

**Herr McLeod** Med alt dette ville vi alle se ut som isbjørner! Forresten har vi ikke råd til det.

*With all that we'd look like polar bears! Besides, we couldn't afford it!*

**Ekspeditøren** Unnskyld, jeg ville bare komme med noen forslag for å gjøre valget lettere for Dem.

*Excuse me, I just meant to make a few suggestions to make the choice easier for you.*

**Fru McLeod** Selvfølgelig setter vi pris på det. Men jeg tror vi begynner med å se på noen boble jakker til barna og noen lette forede kapper til min mann og meg.

*Of course we appreciate that. But I think we'll start by looking at some quilted anoraks for the kids and some light lined overcoats for my husband and myself.*

**Ekspeditøren** Javel, frue. Vær så god, denne veien!

*Certainly, madam. This way, please!*

## Chapter 5

In Chapter 5 you will learn:

- how verbs divide into two groups, 'weak' and 'strong', and how the past tense is formed for each group
- how to form adverbs from adjectives
- some common adverbs not formed from adjectives
- some differences between Norwegian and English word order
- how to form the ordinal numbers ('first', 'second', 'third', etc.)

### 21 The past tense of weak verbs

The Norwegian past tense is used, in much the same way as in English, to describe events or actions which took place in the past.

Norwegian has two main groups of verbs with different patterns of conjugation: weak (regular) verbs and strong (irregular) verbs (sec. 22).

Most weak verbs form their past tense by adding: **-et** or **-te** to the stem:

**kast + et = kastet** (threw), **bruk + te = brukte** (used) etc.

Examples:

|        |                   |      |         |
|--------|-------------------|------|---------|
| miste  | mistet (mista*)   | lose | lost    |
| vente  | ventet (venta*)   | wait | waited  |
| snakke | snakket (snakka*) | talk | talked  |
| stoppe | stoppet (stoppa*) | stop | stopped |
| leke   | lekte             | play | played  |

|         |         |       |         |
|---------|---------|-------|---------|
| føle    | følte   | feel  | felt    |
| gjemme  | gjemte  | hide  | hid     |
| mene    | mente   | mean  | meant   |
| lære    | lærte   | learn | learned |
| lese    | leste   | read  | read    |
| sende   | sendte  | send  | sent    |
| trengje | trengte | need  | needed  |
| fylle   | fylte   | fill  | filled  |
| drømme  | drømte  | dream | dreamt  |
| tenne   | tente   | light | lighted |

\* Colloquial (and Nynorsk) form

Note that verbs with a stem ending in **-ll**, **-mm**, **-nn** drop their last letter before the ending: **fylle – fylte** etc.

Some verbs take **-de** (**-et\*\***) or **-dde**:

|       |                  |             |                |
|-------|------------------|-------------|----------------|
| bygge | bygde (bygget**) | build       | built          |
| leve  | levde (levet**)  | live        | lived          |
| eie   | eide (eiet**)    | own         | owned          |
| bøye  | bøyde (bøyet**)  | bend        | bent           |
| bo    | bodde            | live (stay) | lived (stayed) |
| blø   | blødde           | bleed       | bled           |
| ha    | hadde            | have        | had            |
| kle   | kledde           | dress       | dressed        |
| snu   | snudde           | turn        | turned         |
| vri   | vridde           | twist       | twisted        |

\*\* Traditional forms still used by many Norwegians.

Note particularly (with one **d** in the past tense):

|    |      |     |      |
|----|------|-----|------|
| dø | døde | die | died |
|----|------|-----|------|

A few weak verbs change their stem vowel in the past tense, such as:

|        |        |       |         |
|--------|--------|-------|---------|
| selge  | solgte | sell  | sold    |
| spørre | spurte | ask   | asked   |
| gjøre  | gjorde | do    | did     |
| bringe | brakte | bring | brought |

Note that, as in the present tense, the simple tense is used in Norwegian where English would use the continuous tense: **Han spurte** = 'He asked' or 'He was asking'.



There is no word corresponding to 'did' in questions and negative sentences (compare sec. 9):

**Hva svarte du?** What did you answer?

**Jeg gjorde det ikke.** I didn't do it.

## Vocabulary

Past tense forms given in brackets.

|                            |                |
|----------------------------|----------------|
| <b>å kaste (-et) [på]</b>  | to throw [at]  |
| <b>steinen</b>             | the stone      |
| <b>hverandre</b>           | each other     |
| <b>å skade (-et)</b>       | to hurt        |
| <b>å hente (-et)</b>       | to fetch       |
| <b>treningsdrakten</b>     | the track suit |
| <b>å jogge (-et)</b>       | to go jogging  |
| <b>parken</b>              | the park       |
| <b>til frokost</b>         | for breakfast  |
| <b>å koke (-te)</b>        | to boil        |
| <b>noen</b>                | some           |
| <b>å steke (-te)</b>       | to fry         |
| <b>å høre (-te)</b>        | to hear        |
| <b>lyden</b>               | the noise      |
| <b>å hende (-te)</b>       | to happen      |
| <b>vinden</b>              | the wind       |
| <b>kraftig</b>             | hard           |
| <b>å lukke (-et)</b>       | to close       |
| <b>å bry (-dde) seg om</b> | to worry about |

IMITATED PRONUNCIATION mis'-te, mis'-tet; ven'-te, ven'-tet; snahk'-ke, snahk'-ket; stop'-pe, stop'-pet; le:k'-e, le:k'-te; fö:'-le, fö:l'-te; yem'-me, yem'-te; me:'-ne, me:n'-te, la:'-re, la:r'-te; le:'-se, le:s'-te; sen'-ne, sen'-te; treng'-e, treng'-te; fül'-le, fül'-te; dröm'-me, dröm'-te; ten'-ne, ten'-te; büg'-ge, büg'-de; le:'-ve, lev'-de; ay'-e, ay'-de; böy'-e, böy'-de; boo; bood'-de; blö, blöd'-de; hah:, hahd'-de; kle:, kled'-de; snu:, snud'-de; vree, vrid'-de; dö:, dö'-de; sel'-le, sol'-te; spör'-re, spu:r'-te; yö:'-re, yoo:'-re; bring'-e, brahk'-te; aw kahs'-te (paw); stay'-nen; var-ahn'-dre; aw skah'-de; aw hen'-te; tre:'-nings-drahk'-ten; aw yog'-ge; pahr'-ken; til froo:-kost; aw koo:'-ke; noo:'-en; aw ste:'-ke; aw hö:-re; lü:'den; aw hen'-ne; vin'-nen; krahf'-tee; aw look'-ke; aw brü: say om

## Exercise 21

Translate:

- 1 Some boys were throwing stones at each other.
- 2 We protected our friends.
- 3 He hurt his head.
- 4 They did not believe it.
- 5 She fetched her track suit.
- 6 Every morning she went jogging in the park.
- 7 What did you eat for breakfast?
- 8 I boiled some eggs and fried some potatoes.
- 9 We heard a noise but nothing happened.
- 10 The wind was blowing hard and it was snowing.
- 11 We closed the doors.
- 12 The children were playing on the floor. They didn't worry about the storm.

## 22 The past tense of strong verbs

Strong verbs add no ending in the past tense, but most of them change their stem vowel. Here are some examples:

|               |              |          |              |
|---------------|--------------|----------|--------------|
| <b>skrive</b> | <b>skrev</b> | write    | wrote        |
| <b>fryse</b>  | <b>frøs</b>  | freeze   | froze        |
| <b>drikke</b> | <b>drakk</b> | drink    | drank        |
| <b>gi</b>     | <b>gav</b>   | give     | gave         |
| <b>finne</b>  | <b>fant</b>  | find     | found        |
| <b>gå</b>     | <b>gikk</b>  | walk, go | walked, went |
| <b>se</b>     | <b>så</b>    | see      | saw          |
| <b>hjelpe</b> | <b>hjalp</b> | help     | helped       |
| <b>ta</b>     | <b>tok</b>   | take     | took         |
| <b>skjære</b> | <b>skar</b>  | cut      | cut          |
| <b>trekke</b> | <b>trakk</b> | pull     | pulled       |

Note particularly:

|             |            |        |        |
|-------------|------------|--------|--------|
| <b>bli</b>  | <b>ble</b> | become | became |
| <b>være</b> | <b>var</b> | be     | was    |

Some strong verbs keep their stem vowel in the past tense.  
For example:

|              |             |       |       |
|--------------|-------------|-------|-------|
| <b>komme</b> | <b>kom</b>  | come  | came  |
| <b>sove</b>  | <b>sov</b>  | sleep | slept |
| <b>løpe</b>  | <b>løp</b>  | run   | ran   |
| <b>gråte</b> | <b>gråt</b> | cry   | cried |

## Vocabulary

|                             |                        |
|-----------------------------|------------------------|
| <b>å se etter</b>           | to look for            |
| <b>herren</b>               | the gentleman          |
| <b>å bære (bar)</b>         | to carry               |
| <b>mot</b>                  | towards                |
| <b>i (meget) stor fart</b>  | at a (very) high speed |
| <b>redd</b>                 | frightened             |
| <b>å løpe av sted</b>       | to run away            |
| <b>iskremen</b>             | the ice cream          |
| <b>å roe (-et) noen ned</b> | to calm somebody down  |
| <b>å sette (satte) seg</b>  | to sit down            |
| <b>å si (sa)</b>            | to say                 |

IMITATED PRONUNCIATION skree'-ve, skre:v; frü:'-se, frö:s;  
drik'-ke, drahk; yee, gah::; fin'-ne, fahnt; gaw, yik; se:, saw; yel'-pe,  
yahlp; tah:, too:k; sha:'-re, skah:r; trek'-ke, trahk; blee, ble::; va:'-re,  
vah:r; kom'-me, kom; saw'-ve, sawv; løp-e, lö:p; graw'-te, grawt; aw  
se: et'-ter; har'-ren; aw ba:'-re (bah:r); moo:t; ee (me:'-get) stoo:r  
fahrt; red; aw lö:'-pe ah:v ste:d; ees'-kre:-men; aw roo:'-e noo:'-en  
ne:d; aw set'-te (saht'-te) say; aw see (sah:)

## Exercise 22

Translate:

- 1 She wrote a letter to the chairman.
- 2 They found the man they were looking for.
- 3 He was walking down the street.
- 4 This gentleman helped me.
- 5 He took my suitcases and carried them to the station.
- 6 The car came towards him at a very high speed.
- 7 The boy was frightened and ran away.
- 8 His parents seized him and held him back.
- 9 They gave him an ice cream to calm him down.
- 10 He sat down and said nothing.

## 23 Adverbs

Some adverbs have the same form as the neuter singular of the corresponding adjective (sec. 6). They are formed by adding a **-t** to the common gender form of the adjective: **pen** (nice) + **t** = **pent** (nicely).

Examples:

|                   |                    |           |             |
|-------------------|--------------------|-----------|-------------|
| <b>klok</b>       | <b>klokt</b>       | wise      | wisely      |
| <b>langsom</b>    | <b>langsomt</b>    | slow      | slowly      |
| <b>rask</b>       | <b>raskt</b>       | quick     | quickly     |
| <b>sikker</b>     | <b>sikkert</b>     | certain   | certainly   |
| <b>oppmerksom</b> | <b>oppmerksomt</b> | attentive | attentively |
| <b>søt</b>        | <b>søtt</b>        | sweet     | sweetly     |

Adverbs from adjectives ending in **-ig**, or **-t** preceded by another consonant, add no **-t**:

|                  |          |                    |            |
|------------------|----------|--------------------|------------|
| <b>plutselig</b> | suddenly | <b>fullstendig</b> | completely |
|------------------|----------|--------------------|------------|

|             |          |      |         |
|-------------|----------|------|---------|
| forferdelig | terribly | fort | quickly |
| daglig      | daily    |      |         |

Some adverbs add the ending **-vis**:

|            |               |           |             |
|------------|---------------|-----------|-------------|
| vanlig     | vanligvis     | usual     | usually     |
| heldig     | heldigvis     | fortunate | fortunately |
| naturlig   | naturligvis   | natural   | naturally   |
| sannsynlig | sannsynligvis | probable  | probably    |

Here are some other common adverbs:

|              |             |             |              |
|--------------|-------------|-------------|--------------|
| fremover     | forward     | nå          | now          |
| bakover      | backwards   | før         | before       |
| oppover      | upwards     | senere      | later        |
| nedover      | downwards   | ennå, enda  | still        |
| ovenfor      | above       | ellers      | otherwise    |
| nedenfor     | below       | ofte        | often        |
| innenfor     | inside      | sjelden     | seldom       |
| utenfor      | outside     | knap, neppe | hardly       |
| meget, svært | very        | bare        | only         |
| altfor mye   | too much    | nettopp     | just         |
| nok          | enough      | især        | particularly |
| lite, litt   | (a) little  | endog, selv | even         |
| straks       | immediately | likevel     | yet          |

IMITATED PRONUNCIATION pe:n, pe:nt; kloo:k, kloo:kt; lahg'-som, lahg'-somt; rahsk, rahskt; sik'-ker, sik'-kert; op-mark'-som, op-mark'-somt; söt, söt; plut'-se-lee; ful-sten'-dee; for-far'-de-lee; dah:g'-lee; foort; vah:n'-lee-vees; hel'-dee-vees; nah-tu:r'-lee-vees; sahn-sü:n'-lee-vees; frem'-maw-ver; bah'-kaw-ver; op'-paw-ver; ne'-daw-ver; aw'-ven-for; ne'-den-for; in'-nen-for; u'-ten-for; me'-get, sva:rt; ahl'-for mü:'-e; nok; lee'-te, lit; strahks; naw; fö:r; se'-ne-re; en'-naw, en'-dah; el'-lers; of'-te; shel'-den; knahpt, nep'-pe; bah'-re; net'-top; ee-sa:r'; en'-dawg, sel; lee'-ke-vel

## 24 Word order

In Norwegian the order of the words is often the same as in English. For example: **Han leser avisen.** 'He reads (or is reading) the newspaper.' But in Chapter 2 we saw that the verb is put before the subject in questions: **Leser du?** 'Do you read?' or 'Are you reading?' Inversion of the word order (verb before subject) also takes place in sentences beginning with an adverb or an adverbial expression:

**Her er de!** Here they are!

**Noen ganger går jeg på kino.** Sometimes I go to the cinema.  
**Til slutt gikk hun hjem.** At last she went home.

**I gaten var det mange mennesker.**

In the street there were lots of people.

**(Jeg visste ikke at du var der,) ellers ville jeg ha ventet.**

(I did not know that you were there,) otherwise I would have waited.

Note also that adverbs never come between the subject and the verb as in English:

**Han leser alltid avisen.** He always reads the newspaper.

**De drikker aldri kaffe.** They never drink coffee.

## Vocabulary

|                          |                          |
|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| kanskje                  | perhaps, maybe           |
| sterk(t)                 | strong(ly), bad(ly)      |
| å dra (drog) på fjelltur | to go on a mountain tour |
| å begynne                | to begin                 |
| å regne (-et)            | to rain                  |
| regnfrakken              | the raincoat             |
| vi ble gjennomvåte       | we got wet through       |
| litt etter litt          | gradually                |
| nærmere                  | nearer                   |
| til slutt                | finally                  |
| å komme frem til         | to arrive at             |
| bestemmelsesstedet       | the destination          |
| virkelig                 | really                   |

IMITATED PRONUNCIATION ha:r a:r dee; noo:'-en gahng'-er gawr yay paw khee'-noo; til slut yik hoon yem; ee gah:'-ten vah:r de: mahng'-e men'-ne-sker; yay vis'-te ik'-ke aht du: vah:r da:r, el'-lers vil'-le yay hah: ven'-tet; hahn le:'-ser ahl'-tee ah-vee'-sen; dee drik'-ker ahl'-dree kahf-fe; kahn'-she; stark(t); aw drah: paw fyel'-tu:r; aw be-yün'-ne; aw ray'-ne; rayn'-frakh-ken; vee ble: yen'-nom-vaw:-te; lit et'-ter lit; nar'-me-re; til slut; aw kom'-me frem til; be-stem'-mel-ses-ste:-de; vir'-ke-lee

## Exercise 23

A Give the corresponding adjectives and adverbs in Norwegian:

- |                   |                       |
|-------------------|-----------------------|
| 1 slow – slowly   | 5 correct – correctly |
| 2 quick – quickly | 6 bad – badly         |
| 3 clear – clearly | 7 heavy – heavily     |
| 4 kind – kindly   | 8 terrible – terribly |

B Translate:

- usually, naturally, upwards, downwards, below, above
- very, too much, now, still, yet, seldom, hardly, just, only, differently, particularly, perhaps

C Translate:

- We badly wanted to go on a mountain tour.
- It suddenly began to rain. We had no raincoat, so we soon got wet through.
- But we gradually came nearer to the mountains.
- We finally arrived at our destination.
- We really needed some dry clothes!

## 25 Ordinal numbers

Some ordinal numbers have irregular forms:

|                      |     |                |      |
|----------------------|-----|----------------|------|
| <b>første</b>        | 1st | <b>femte</b>   | 5th  |
| <b>annen (andre)</b> | 2nd | <b>sjette</b>  | 6th  |
| <b>tredje</b>        | 3rd | <b>ellevte</b> | 11th |
| <b>fjerde</b>        | 4th | <b>tolvte</b>  | 12th |

But most ordinal numbers are formed by adding **-ende**, **-nde** or **-de** to the cardinal number:

|                      |                      |      |
|----------------------|----------------------|------|
| (syv (sju) + ende =) | syvende (sjuende)    | 7th  |
| (åtte + nde =)       | åttende              | 8th  |
| (ni + ende =)        | niende               | 9th  |
| (ti + ende =)        | tiende               | 10th |
| (tretten + de =)     | trettende            | 13th |
| (fjorten + de =)     | fjortende            | 14th |
| (femten + de =)      | femtende             | 15th |
| (seksten + de =)     | sekstende            | 16th |
| (sytten + de =)      | syttende             | 17th |
| (atten + de =)       | attende              | 18th |
| (nitten + de =)      | nittende             | 19th |
| (tyve + nde =)       | tyvende (tjuende)    | 20th |
| (enogtyve + nde =)   | enogtyvende          | 21st |
| (toogtyve + nde =)   | toogtyvende          | 22nd |
| (tretti + ende =)    | trettende (tredevte) | 30th |
| (førti + ende =)     | førtiende            | 40th |
| (femti + ende =)     | femtiende            | 50th |
| (seksti + ende =)    | sekstiende           | 60th |
| (sytti + ende =)     | syttiende            | 70th |
| (åtti + ende =)      | åttiende             | 80th |
| (nitti + ende =)     | nittiende            | 90th |

Remember that, while most Norwegian say **enogtyvende**, **toogtyvende**, **femogtredevte**, **fireogførtiende**, **seksogfemtiende** etc., according to the official method of counting the small numbers (1–9) should be spoken after units of ten (20–90): **tjueførste**, **tjueandre**, **trettifemte**, **førtifjerde**, **femtisjette** etc.

In both traditional and colloquial speech ordinals are used in fractions, as in English:

|                        |                           |
|------------------------|---------------------------|
| <b>en tredjedel</b>    | a third (lit. third part) |
| <b>to tredjedeler</b>  | two thirds                |
| <b>fire femtedeler</b> | four fifths               |

But cardinals are used in modern schoolbooks: **en tredel** (lit. a three part), **to tredeler**, **fire femdeler**.

Note these fractional expressions:

|                   |                          |
|-------------------|--------------------------|
| en kvart kilo     | a quarter (of a) kilo    |
| en halv kilo      | half a kilo              |
| tre kvart kilo    | three quarters of a kilo |
| en og en halv uke | one and a half weeks     |

Ordinals are also used in such expressions as:

|                          |   |
|--------------------------|---|
| for det første           | firstly                                   |
| for det annet (or andre) | secondly                                  |
| for det tredje           | thirdly                                   |
| hvert fjerde år          | every four years (lit. every fourth year) |

IMITATED PRONUNCIATION för'-ste; ah'-en, ahn'-dre; tre'-dye; fya'-re; fem'-te, shet'-te, el'-lev-te, tol'-te; sü: '-ve-ne, shu: '-e-ne, ot'-te-ne, nee'-e-ne, tee'-e-ne, tret'-te-ne, fyoor'-te-ne, fem'-te-ne, says'-te-ne, söt'-te-ne, aht'-te-ne, nit'-te-ne, tü: '-ve-ne, khu: '-e-ne, e:n'-o-tü-ve-ne, khu-e-för'-ste, too: '-o-tü-ve-ne, khu-e-ahn'-dre, tre'-dev-te, tre'-tee-e-nee, för'-tee-e-ne, fem'-tee-e-ne, seks'-tee-e-ne, söt-tee-e-ne, ot'-tee-e-ne, nit'-tee-e-ne; e:n tre: '-dye-de:l; too: tre: '-dye-de:ler; fee'-re fem'-te-de-ler; e:n kvahrt khee'-loo; e:n hahl khee'-loo; tre: kvahrt khee'-loo; e:n aw e:n hahl u: '-ke; for de: för'-ste; for de: ah: '-ent (ahn'-dre); tre: '-dye; vart fya: '-re awr

## Exercise 24

Translate, using words instead of figures:

- 1st, 2nd, 3rd, 4th, 5th, 6th, 7th, 8th, 9th, 10th
- 11th, 12th, 13th, 20th, 21st, 32nd, 45th, 53rd, 66th, 78th, 87th, 99th
- $1/2$ ,  $3/4$ ,  $5/8$ ,  $7/12$ ,  $8/15$

## Vocabulary

(The past tense endings of verbs are given in brackets)

|                       |   |
|-----------------------|---|
| å ende (-dte)         | to end                                    |
| å begynne (-te)       | to start                                  |
| selskapet             | the party                                 |
| mye                   | plenty                                    |
| å drikke (drakk)      | to drink                                  |
| å danse (-et)         | to dance                                  |
| å gå på (en) rangel   | to go boozing                             |
| å vende (-te) tilbake | to go back, return                        |
| pyntelig              | properly                                  |
| å falle (-lt) i søvn  | to fall asleep                            |
| stakkars              | poor                                      |
| å skru (-dde) på      | to turn on                                |
| dusjen                | the shower                                |
| å la (lot)            | to let                                    |
| varm                  | hot                                       |
| å skylle (-lte)       | to pour                                   |
| stunden               | the while                                 |
| forberedt             | prepared                                  |
| problemet             | the problem                               |
| fornøyd               | pleased                                   |
| fordi                 | because                                   |
| ettermiddagen         | the afternoon                             |
| du måtte              | you had to                                |
| overfylt              | (over)crowded                             |
| hyggelig              | pleasant                                  |
| hele                  | whole                                     |
| godt                  | nice                                      |
| å se på fjernsyn      | to watch television                       |
| formen                | the shape                                 |
| frisk som en fisk     | as fit as a fiddle (lit. fresh as a fish) |

IMITATED PRONUNCIATION: We feel that you should now be fairly confident as far as the pronunciation is concerned, and we are discontinuing the imitated pronunciation at this point. If you are still having difficulty with this aspect of the language, we strongly recommend that you purchase the cassette recordings which accompany this course.

## Conversation

**Når enden er god, er allting godt**  
*All's well that ends well*

- Fru Hansen** Hva gjorde De i går, herr McLeod?  
*What did you do yesterday, Mr McLeod?*
- Herr McLeod** Det begynte meget dårlig. Jeg stod sent opp.  
*I had a very bad start. I got up late.*
- Fru Hansen** Hva mener De med sent?  
*What do you call late?*
- Herr McLeod** Omtrent halv ett, tror jeg.  
*About half past twelve, I think.*
- Fru Hansen** Hvorfor sov De så lenge?  
*What made you sleep that long?*
- Herr McLeod** Min kone og jeg var i et selskap natten før. Vi fikk mye å spise og drikke, og vi danset og snakket til klokken to om natten.  
*My wife and I were at a party the night before. We got plenty to eat and drink and we went on dancing and talking till two o'clock in the morning (lit. night).*
- Fru Hansen** De var på en ordentlig rangel, ikke sant?  
*You really went boozing, didn't you?*
- Herr McLeod** Nei, det var ikke så ille. Vi vendte tilbake til hotellet og gikk pent og pyntelig og la oss. Men jeg sovnet ikke før klokken fem om morgenen!  
*No, it wasn't that bad. We went back to the hotel and went to bed properly. But I didn't fall asleep till five o'clock in the morning!*
- Fru Hansen** Stakkars Dem! Og hva gjorde De så om morgenen?  
*Oh, poor you! And what did you do in the morning?*

**Herr McLeod** Ja, jeg skrudde på dusjen og lot det varme vannet skylle ned over meg en lang, lang stund. Så avsluttet jeg mitt bad med en kald dusj, og etterpå følte jeg meg klar til å møte dagens store og små problemer.

*Well, I turned on the shower and let the hot water pour down on me for a long, long while. Then I finished my wash with a cold shower, and after that I felt prepared to meet the large and small problems of the day.*

**Fru Hansen** Ble det noen problemer, da?  
*Were there any problems?*

**Herr McLeod** Ja, det skal være sikkert! Min kone var ikke særlig glad, for hun ønsket å gå og handle med meg om morgenen.

*Yes indeed! My wife wasn't very pleased because she wanted to go shopping with me in the morning.*

**Fru Hansen** Og så måtte dere gå og handle om ettermiddagen?  
*And so you had to do the shopping in the afternoon?*

**Herr McLeod** Ja, men alle forretningene var overfylt av mennesker, og vi gikk fra den ene forretningen til den andre hele ettermiddagen.  
*Yes, but the shops were all crowded with people, and we spent the whole afternoon walking from shop to shop.*

**Fru Hansen** Så dere hadde altså en riktig dårlig dag?  
*So you really had a bad day?*

**Herr McLeod** Nei, etterpå gikk vi hjem og tilbrakte en hyggelig aften – på hotellet.  
*No, after that we went home and spent a pleasant evening – at the hotel!*

→



**Fru Hansen** På hotellet? Og hva gjorde dere hele aftenen?

*At the hotel? But what did you do the whole evening?*

**Herr McLeod** Ja, vi fikk noe godt å spise, og vi så på fjernsyn! Og klokken elleve sovnet vi!

*Well, we got something nice to eat and we watched television! And at eleven o'clock we fell asleep!*

**Fru Hansen** Og i dag er De i fin form?

*And today you're in good shape?*

**Herr McLeod** Ja, jeg føler meg frisk som en fisk!

*Yes, I feel as fit as a fiddle!*

## Chapter 6

This chapter introduces:

- the past participle of verbs and how it is used to form the perfect tense
- some irregular verbs – the 'modal auxiliaries'
- the comparative and superlative forms of adverbs, including some common irregular ones
- some adverbs with two forms, expressing location and motion
- seasons, months and how to give the date

### 26 The past participle

The past participle is formed by adding one of the following endings to the stem of the verb:

|             |                 |              |
|-------------|-----------------|--------------|
| -et (-a*):  | kastet (kasta*) | thrown       |
| -t:         | brukt           | used         |
| -tt:        | gått            | gone, walked |
| -d (-et**): | levd (levet**)  | lived        |
| -dd:        | kledd           | dressed      |

\* colloquial and Nynorsk form

\*\* traditional form

### 27 The perfect tense

The perfect tense of most verbs is composed of the auxiliary *ha* 'have' and the past participle of the principal verb. This is the same as in English:

**Jeg har spist.**  
I have eaten.

**Han har sovet.**  
He has slept (or has been sleeping).

**De har solgt huset (sitt).**  
They have sold their house.

**I dag har vi vært på konsert.**  
Today we have been to a concert.

Some verbs form their perfect tense with **være**; see sec. 35.

## 28 Rehearsing the verb

To rehearse a verb is to recite its three key forms: the infinitive, the past tense and the past participle. Knowing how to rehearse a verb, you will be able to use it in all tenses.

The following lists of *weak and strong verbs* will give you an idea of the main verb patterns:

### Weak verbs

| <i>Infinitive</i> | <i>Past tense</i> | <i>Past participle</i> |
|-------------------|-------------------|------------------------|
| snakke talk       | snakket (-a)      | snakket (-a)           |
| vente wait        | ventet (-a)       | ventet (-a)            |
| føle (seg) feel   | følte             | følt                   |
| trengte need      | trengte           | trengt                 |
| leve live         | levde             | levd                   |
| eie own           | eide              | eid                    |
| gro grow          | grodde            | grodd                  |
| snu turn          | snudde            | snudd                  |
| vri twist         | vridde            | vridd                  |
| ha have           | hadde             | hatt                   |
| dø die            | døde              | dødd                   |
| selgte sell       | solgte            | solgt                  |
| gjorde do         | gjorde            | gjort                  |
| spørre ask        | spurte            | spurt                  |
| bringe bring      | brakte            | brakt                  |

### Strong verbs

| <i>Infinitive</i> | <i>Past tense</i> | <i>Past participle</i> |
|-------------------|-------------------|------------------------|
| skrive write      | skrev             | skrevet                |
| si say            | sa                | sagt                   |
| fryse freeze      | fros              | frosset                |
| drikke drink      | drakk             | drukket                |
| finne find        | fant              | funnet                 |
| brekke break      | brakk             | brukket                |
| hjelpe help       | hjalp             | hjulpet                |
| gi give           | gav               | gitt                   |
| gå go             | gikk              | gått                   |
| se see            | så                | sett                   |
| la let            | lot               | latt                   |
| ta take           | tok               | tatt                   |
| skjære cut        | skar              | skåret                 |
| komme come        | kom               | komet                  |
| løpe run          | løp               | løpt                   |
| gråte cry         | gråt              | grått                  |
| bli become, be    | ble               | blitt                  |
| være be           | var               | vært                   |

Rehearse the above verbs in small groups until they are familiar, and learn every new verb in this course in the same way. From this chapter on the key forms of all new verbs will be indicated in the vocabularies as shown here:

|                   |       |
|-------------------|-------|
| føle (-te, -t)    | feel  |
| bære (bar, båret) | carry |

## Vocabulary

|                       |                 |
|-----------------------|-----------------|
| på lang tid           | for a long time |
| brevet                | the letter      |
| kollegaen             | the colleague   |
| å komme (kom, kommet) |                 |
| for sent til          | to miss         |
| travel                | busy            |
| babyen                | the baby        |
| hele natten           | all night       |
| å føle (-te, -t) seg  | to feel         |
| deprimert             | depressed       |

|                                      |                                     |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| å gå (gikk, gått) en tur             | to go for a walk                    |
| å tilbringe (-brakte, -brakt) sammen | to spend together                   |
| hele livet (vårt)                    | all our lives (lit. our whole life) |
| siste                                | last                                |
| filmen                               | the film                            |
| på kino                              | to the cinema                       |

## Exercise 25

Translate:

- 1 Have you talked with your friend?
- 2 No, I haven't seen him for a long time, but I have written a letter to him.
- 3 Your colleagues have been waiting for you.
- 4 I've missed the train.
- 5 She's had a busy day.
- 6 The baby has been crying all night.
- 7 She's been feeling depressed.
- 8 They've gone for a walk.
- 9 We've spent a good time together.
- 10 We've been living in Oslo all our lives.
- 11 Have you seen his last film?
- 12 No, I haven't been to the cinema for many years.

## 29 More irregular verbs

| Infinitive | Present tense |                      |
|------------|---------------|----------------------|
| å burde    | jeg bør       | I should, I ought to |
| å kunne    | jeg kan       | I can, I am able to  |
| å måtte    | jeg må        | I must, I have to    |
| å skulle   | jeg skal      | I shall, I am to     |
| å ville    | jeg vil       | I will, I want to    |

The past tense of these verbs has the same form as the infinitive (**jeg burde, jeg kunne** etc.) and they can also be used in the perfect tense (**jeg har burdet, jeg har kunnet** etc.).

The English translations of the present tense are only meant to give you a rough idea of the meaning of these verbs – the so-called modal auxiliaries. You will gradually become familiar with them, but in the meantime, study the examples below and note how these verbs are translated:

**Jeg kan ikke snakke norsk.**

I cannot speak Norwegian.

**Da bør (burde) du lære det.**

Then you should (you ought to) learn.

**Du må hjelpe meg.**

You must help me.

**I morgen skal jeg besøke mine foreldre.**

Tomorrow I shall (I am to) visit my parents.

**Skal jeg komme i overmorgen?**

Shall I (Would you like me to) come the day after tomorrow?

**Ja, om aftenen vil jeg være ledig.**

Yes, in the evening I shall be free.

**Ved hvilket klokkeslett vil(le) du komme?**

At what time do you want (would you like) to come?

As you see, the auxiliaries are used with a principal verb in the infinitive: **kan (ikke) snakke, bør lære** etc. But if the principal verb is a verb expressing motion, it can sometimes be dropped:

**Hvor skal du?**

Where are you going?

**Jeg må på kontoret.**

I must go to the office.

**Barna ville på kino.**

The children wanted to go to the pictures.

**Skal du i selskap?**

Are you going to a party?

In some of the above examples **skal** and **vil** are used together with an infinitive to express the future (see sec. 41).

Note also the irregular forms of the verb **å vite** 'to know': **jeg visste** 'I knew'; **jeg har visst** 'I have known'. This follows a similar pattern to the modal auxiliaries.

## Vocabulary

|                           |                        |
|---------------------------|------------------------|
| <b>på forhånd</b>         | in advance, beforehand |
| <b>når</b>                | at what time           |
| <b>å hente (-et, -et)</b> | to collect             |
| <b>tidlig</b>             | early                  |

## Exercise 26

Translate:

- Where shall we go this evening?
- I want to go to the cinema.
- We ought to order tickets in advance.
- Yes I know that. At what time must we collect the tickets?
- When would you like me to come (lit. that I shall come)?
- Can you come a bit earlier?
- I'll be there at six.
- We mustn't be too late.

## 30 Comparison of adverbs

Many adverbs are compared, like the adjectives, by adding **-(e)re** in the comparative and **-(e)st** in the superlative, as in:

|                       |                  |                  |
|-----------------------|------------------|------------------|
| <b>sjelden</b> seldom | <b>sjeldnere</b> | <b>sjeldnest</b> |
| <b>ofte</b> often     | <b>oftere</b>    | <b>oftest</b>    |
| <b>sakte</b> slowly   | <b>saktere</b>   | <b>saktest</b>   |
| <b>fort</b> fast      | <b>fortere</b>   | <b>fortest</b>   |
| <b>tidlig</b> early   | <b>tidligere</b> | <b>tidligst</b>  |
| <b>sent</b> late      | <b>senere</b>    | <b>senest</b>    |
| <b>lett</b> easy      | <b>lettere</b>   | <b>letttest</b>  |

But note the following adverbs which have irregular comparison:

|                         |                       |                        |
|-------------------------|-----------------------|------------------------|
| <b>lite</b> little      | <b>mindre</b> less    | <b>minst</b> least     |
| <b>mye (meget)</b> much | <b>mer</b> more       | <b>mest</b> most       |
| <b>vondt</b> badly      | <b>verre</b> worse    | <b>verst</b> worst     |
| <b>godt</b> well        | <b>bedre</b> better   | <b>best</b> best       |
| <b>langt</b> far        | <b>lengre</b> farther | <b>lengst</b> farthest |

Adverbs of two or more syllables generally form the comparative with **mer** 'more' and the superlative with **mest** 'most', as for example:

|                                 |                         |                          |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------|--------------------------|
| <b>klosset</b> clumsily         | <b>mer klosset</b>      | <b>mest klosset</b>      |
| <b>energisk</b> energetically   | <b>mer energisk</b>     | <b>mest energisk</b>     |
| <b>komfortabelt</b> comfortably | <b>mer komfortabelt</b> | <b>mest komfortabelt</b> |
| <b>oppmerksomt</b> attentively  | <b>mer oppmerksomt</b>  | <b>mest oppmerksomt</b>  |

## Vocabulary

|                                 |               |
|---------------------------------|---------------|
| <b>i natt</b>                   | last night    |
| <b>å bli (ble, blitt)</b>       | to get        |
| <b>å føle seg</b>               | to feel       |
| <b>helt, fullstendig</b>        | completely    |
| <b>frisk (igjen)</b>            | recovered     |
| <b>å stå (stod, stått) opp</b>  | to rise       |
| <b>å forstå (-stod, -stått)</b> | to understand |

|                    |                  |
|--------------------|------------------|
| å bli forstått     | to be understood |
| å lytte (-et, -et) | to listen        |
| tydelig            | distinct         |

## Exercise 27

Translate:

- Last night she got worse.
- But in the morning she felt much better.
- Later in the day she was completely recovered.
- Next day she rose the earliest and worked the fastest of us all.
- Do you want to understand better what people say and be more easily understood?
- Then you must listen more attentively and speak more distinctly.

## 31 More about adverbs

Some adverbs appear in two different forms:

|             |               |               |
|-------------|---------------|---------------|
| <b>inn</b>  | <b>inne</b>   | in(side)      |
| <b>ut</b>   | <b>ute</b>    | out(side)     |
| <b>opp</b>  | <b>oppe</b>   | up            |
| <b>ned</b>  | <b>nede</b>   | down          |
| <b>bort</b> | <b>borte</b>  | away          |
| <b>hjem</b> | <b>hjemme</b> | home, at home |

The short forms (**inn**, **ut** etc.) are used to indicate motion towards a place; the forms with a final **-e** indicate position, being in a place:

**Kom inn!**  
Come in!

**Vi er alle inne.**  
We are all in(side).

**Klokken 7 skal vi gå ut.**  
At 7 o'clock we'll go out.

**Vi blir (or Vi vil bli) ute til 11.**  
We'll stay out till 11.

**Vi skal (dra opp) til Holmenkollen.**  
We'll go up to Holmenkollen.

**Der oppe vil vi (få) se den berømte hoppbakken.**  
Up there we'll see the famous ski jump.

Similarly, in Norwegian there is a distinction between **her** 'here' and **der** 'there' on the one hand, and **hit** ('hither') and **dit** ('thither') on the other. The English words 'here' and 'there' must therefore sometimes be translated by **her** and **der**, sometimes by **hit** and **dit**:

**Her er vi.** Here we are.

**Kom hit.** Come here.

**De sitter der (borte).** They are sitting over there.

**Gå ikke dit!** Don't go there!

**Jeg er her i bygningen nå.** I'm here in this building now.

**Jeg kom hit klokken 12.** I came here at 12 o'clock.

In some idiomatic expressions **her** and **der** are used to replace the English demonstratives 'this' and 'that':

|                       |                 |
|-----------------------|-----------------|
| <b>her i byen</b>     | in this town    |
| <b>der i landet</b>   | in that country |
| <b>her i familien</b> | in this family  |
| <b>der i huset</b>    | in that house   |

## Vocabulary

|                           |                    |
|---------------------------|--------------------|
| å treffe (traff, truffet) | to meet            |
| å kjøre (-te, -t)         | to drive           |
| å be (bad, bedt)          | to invite          |
| uten å si fra til oss     | without telling us |
| å følge (fulgte, fulgt)   | to comply with the |
| husordenen                | regulations        |

## Exercise 28

Insert the correct form of the adverb in the brackets:

- 1 Per gikk (down) på gaten.
- 2 (Down) på gaten traff han en venn.
- 3 De kjørte (away) i en bil.
- 4 De ble (away) i tre timer.
- 5 (At home) ventet foreldrene på ham.
- 6 De bad meg (home).
- 7 Du skulle ikke gå (there) uten å si fra til oss.
- 8 (In this house) må alle følge husordenen.

## 32 Seasons

|          |            |
|----------|------------|
| årstiden | the season |
| våren    | the spring |
| sommeren | the summer |
| høsten   | the autumn |
| vinteren | the winter |

Note the following expressions:

|                            |                                   |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| om våren, om sommeren etc. | in the spring, in the summer etc. |
| til våren                  | next spring                       |
| i fjor sommer              | last summer                       |
| i høst                     | this autumn                       |
| sist vinter                | during the past winter            |

## 33 Months and dates

|         |           |         |          |
|---------|-----------|---------|----------|
| måneden | the month | februar | February |
| datoen  | the date  | mars    | March    |
| januar  | January   | april   | April    |

mai May  
juni June  
juli July  
august August

september September  
oktober October  
november November  
desember December

Note that the months of the year are not written with a capital letter as in English.

Ordinal numbers are used in dates, as in English:

Hvilken dato er det i dag? What is the date today?

Det er den første juni. It's the first of June.

Det er den syvende juli. It's the seventh of July.

Det er den syttende mai. It's the seventeenth of May.

In figures these are written as: **1. juni** (1st June), **7. juli** (7th July), **17. mai** (17th May).

Public holidays:

|                               |                      |
|-------------------------------|----------------------|
| Nyttårsdag (1. januar)        | New Year's Day       |
| Skjærtorsdag                  | Maundy Thursday      |
| Langfredag                    | Good Friday          |
| Annen påskedag                | Easter Monday        |
| Arbeidets dag (1. mai)        | Labour Day (May Day) |
| Nasjonaldagen (17. mai)       | Constitution Day     |
| Kristi Himmelfartsdag         | Ascension Day        |
| Første pinsedag               | Whit Sunday          |
| Annen pinsedag                | Whit Monday          |
| Første juledag (25. desember) | Christmas Day        |
| Annen juledag (26. desember)  | Boxing Day           |

## Vocabulary

|                                 |                     |
|---------------------------------|---------------------|
| å gå (gikk) på skitur           | to go skiing        |
| å gå på skøytebanen             | to go skating       |
| å gå på aketur                  | to go sledging      |
| påskeferien                     | the Easter holidays |
| fjellhytta                      | the mountain hut    |
| å feire (-et, -et)              | to celebrate        |
| å dra (drog, dratt) på fisketur | to go fishing       |
| fjellvannet                     | the mountain lake   |
| vi skal dra på seiltur          | we shall go sailing |



## Exercise 29

*Translate:*

- 1 Which season do you prefer?
- 2 I like all seasons.
- 3 In winter we go skiing and skating and sometimes sledging.
- 4 Last spring we spent the Easter holidays in a mountain hut in Hallingdal.
- 5 We stayed there from Maundy Thursday till Easter Monday.
- 6 On the seventeenth of May we celebrated the Norwegian Constitution Day.
- 7 This summer we went fishing in a mountain lake in Gudbrandsdalen.
- 8 During the past autumn we were walking in the mountains.
- 9 Next summer we shall go sailing in the Oslofjord.
- 10 What date is it today?
- 11 It's 6th January, 28th February, 11th March, 21st April, 4th July, 2nd September, 25th October, 3rd November, 27th December.
- 12 It's New Year's Day, Good Friday, Ascension Day, Christmas Day, Whit Monday.

## Vocabulary

|                            |                              |
|----------------------------|------------------------------|
| hotellbaren                | the hotel bar                |
| å håpe (-et, -et)          | to hope                      |
| enda en                    | another                      |
| søvnløs                    | sleepless                    |
| å sove (sov, sovnet)       | to sleep                     |
| som en sten                | like a log (lit. a stone)    |
| hva er galt med            | what's wrong with            |
| usivilisert                | uncivilised                  |
| litt                       | a bit                        |
| tapper                     | brave                        |
| å kjempe (-et, -et)        | to fight                     |
| du har nok rett            | I suppose you're right       |
| skikken                    | the custom                   |
| å skåle (-te, -t)          | to toast                     |
| Skål!                      | Cheers!                      |
| å stamme (-et, -et) fra    | to originate from            |
| polskipet                  | the polar ship               |
| Norsk Sjøfartsmuseum       | Norwegian Maritime<br>Museum |
| å like (-te, -t)           | to enjoy                     |
| særlig                     | particularly                 |
| sønnen                     | the son                      |
| fengslet (av)              | fascinated (by)              |
| flåten                     | the raft                     |
| å lage (-et, -et) middagen | to prepare the dinner        |
| bondegården                | the farmhouse                |
| stavkirken                 | the stave church             |
| leikarringen               | the folk dance ensemble      |
| å danse (et, -et)          | to dance                     |
| folkedansene               | the folk dances              |
| de regnet dagen for slutt  | they called it a day         |
| slutt (over)               | over                         |
| ennå                       | yet                          |
| musikalen                  | the musical                  |
| å skynde (-dte, -dt) seg   | to hurry                     |
| God fornøyelse!            | Have a good time!            |

## CONVERSATION

### Møte i hotellbaren

*Meeting in the hotel bar*

**Fru Hansen** God dag, herr McLeod. Hvor har De vært i hele dag? Jeg håper De ikke har hatt enda en søvnløs natt?

*Good afternoon, Mr McLeod. Where have you been all day? I hope you haven't had another sleepless night?*

**Herr McLeod** Nei, da! I natt har jeg sovet som en sten! Vi stod tidlig opp, og vi har vært sammen med vår familie på Bygdøy hele dagen.

*Oh no! Last night I slept like a log! We got up early, and we spent the whole day with our family at Bygdøy.*

**Fru Hansen** Så dere hadde en travel dag?

*So you've had a busy day?*

**Herr McLeod** Ja, det hele begynte med vikingskipene. De skjønner, jeg har aldri vært særlig glad i vikingene ...

*Yes, it all started with the Viking ships. You see, I've never really liked the Vikings ...*

**Fru Hansen** Hva er det som er så galt med vikingene? De var kanskje mer usiviliserte og litt galere enn andre mennesker på den tiden. Men de var tapre og kjempet godt ...

*What's (so) wrong with the Vikings? They were perhaps more uncivilised and a bit more crazy than other people at that time. But they were brave and fought well ...*

**Herr McLeod** De har nok rett. I det minste må de ha visst hvordan de skulle bygge skip. Forresten, visste De at den gamle skikken med å skåle stammer fra vikingene?

*I suppose you're right. At least they must have known how to build ships! By the way, did you know that the old custom of toasting originates from the Vikings?*

**Fru Hansen** Nei, det visste jeg ikke. Skål for vikingene, herr McLeod!

*No, I didn't. Cheers to the Vikings, Mr McLeod!*

**Herr McLeod** Skål for vikingene!

*To the Vikings!*

**Fru Hansen** Nå, og hva mer så dere?

*Well, and what else (lit. more) did you see?*

**Herr McLeod** Min bror tok med meg og to av barna til Bygdøynes for å se polarskipet 'Fram', 'Kon-Tiki' og Norsk Sjøfartsmuseum. My brother took me and two of the kids to Bygdøynes to see the polar ship 'Fram', the 'Kon-Tiki' and the Norwegian Maritime Museum.

**Fru Hansen** Barna Deres likte nok det, ikke sant?

*Your kids enjoyed that, didn't they?*

**Herr McLeod** Ja, særlig min sønn David var fengslet av 'Fram' og 'Kon-Tiki'-flåten.

*Yes, especially my son David was fascinated by the 'Fram' and the 'Kon-Tiki' raft.*

**Fru Hansen** Og hva med Deres kone og svigerinne? Var de fengslet av å være hjemme og lage middagen?

*And what about your wife and your sister-in-law? Were they fascinated by staying at home preparing the dinner?*

**Herr McLeod** Nei, de drog på Folkemuseet for å se på bondegårdene og den gamle stavkirken. De så til og med en leikarring som danset de gamle folkedansene.

*No, they went to the Folk Museum to see the farmhouses and the old stave church. They even saw a 'leikarring' dancing the traditional folk dances.*

→

**Fru Hansen** Og dermed var dagen slutt?  
*And you called it a day?*

**Herr McLeod** Ja, det trodde jeg! Men den er ikke slutt  
ennå. Vi har kjøpt billetter til en musikal på  
Det Norske Teatret i kveld. Unnskyld, jeg  
må skynde meg! Adjø!

*So I thought! But it isn't over yet. We've bought  
tickets for a musical at the Norwegian Theatre  
tonight. Excuse me, I must hurry! Goodbye!*

**Fru Hansen** Adjø. Og god fornøyelse!  
*Goodbye. And have a good time!*

## Chapter 7

In Chapter 7 you will learn:

- a new tense: the pluperfect
- how some verbs form the perfect and pluperfect tenses with **være**, not **ha**
- some frequently used prepositions ('in', 'at', 'by', etc.)
- how to say 'there is' and 'there are' in Norwegian
- the indefinite pronouns 'some', 'someone', 'any', 'anyone' and so on
- larger numbers and some numerical expressions
- how to talk about the weather

### 34 The pluperfect

The pluperfect tense is composed of the past tense of **ha** 'have' and the past participle of the principal verb (compare the perfect tense, sec. 27):

**Vi hadde vært på en fotballkamp.**

We had been to a football match.

**De hadde allerede spist middag da vi kom hjem.**

They had already had dinner when we came home.

**De hadde sett kampen på fjernsyn.**

They had seen the match on television.

### 35 Verbs conjugated with *være*

The verb **være** 'be' is traditionally used instead of **ha** in the perfect and the pluperfect tense of verbs expressing motion or change, such as **gå** 'go', **komme** 'come', **reise (bort)** 'leave', **bli** 'become', **begynne** 'begin', **sovne** 'fall asleep' etc:

**Hun er nettopp kommet.** She has just arrived.  
**De var allerede reist.** They had already left.  
**Han er blitt syk.** He has been taken ill.

But in modern colloquial speech **ha** is often used even in these cases: **Hun har nettopp kommet** etc.

## Vocabulary

|                           |                |
|---------------------------|----------------|
| alvorlig                  | serious(ly)    |
| å forlate (-lot, -latt)   | to leave       |
| å bli (ble, blitt) bedre  | to get better  |
| i fjor jul                | last Christmas |
| å forandre (-et, -et) seg | to change      |
| som om                    | as if          |

### Exercise 30

*Translate:*

- 1 My friend had been seriously ill.
- 2 He had left the country.
- 3 Now he had got better, and he had come home.
- 4 We had invited him for dinner.
- 5 I had not seen him since last Christmas.
- 6 He had not changed.
- 7 We talked as if nothing had happened.

## 36 Prepositions

Here are some Norwegian prepositions. Among them are some of the most frequently used words in the Norwegian language:

|              |             |        |                     |
|--------------|-------------|--------|---------------------|
| i            | in          | for    | for                 |
| på           | on/at       | mot    | against/<br>towards |
| over         | over        | før    | before              |
| under        | under       | etter  | after               |
| foran        | in front of | mellom | between             |
| bak          | behind      | uten   | without             |
| ved siden av | next to     | med    | with                |
| til          | to/till     | ved    | at                  |
| fra          | from        | om     | in/about/<br>round  |
| av           | of/by       | innen  | within/<br>before   |

The translations of the prepositions given above indicate only their basic meanings. Study the examples below; we shall give further details on their use later in the course (secs 57, 58, 64):

|                       |                           |
|-----------------------|---------------------------|
| i byen                | in the town               |
| på bordet             | on the table              |
| over trærne           | over the trees            |
| under sengen          | under the bed             |
| foran huset           | in front of the house     |
| bak skapet            | behind the cupboard       |
| ved siden av Rådhuset | next to the City Hall     |
| til Oslo              | to Oslo                   |
| fra London            | from London               |
| Kongen av Norge       | the King of Norway        |
| for deg               | for you                   |
| mot vinden            | against the wind          |
| før jul               | before Christmas          |
| etter sommerferien    | after the summer holidays |
| mellom regnskurene    | between the showers       |
| uten sukker           | without sugar             |
| med melk              | with milk                 |
| ved vinduet           | at the window             |
| om to måneder         | in two months             |
| innen et år           | within a year             |

### 37 Det er ('there is')

**Det** (or **der**) is used with the verb **er** (or alternatively **finnes**) to express the English 'there is' and 'there are':

**Det er** (or **Det finnes**) **blomster på bordet.**  
There are flowers on the table.

**Det er** (or **Det finnes**) **melk i kjøleskapet.**  
There is milk in the fridge.

### Vocabulary

|                             |                     |
|-----------------------------|---------------------|
| statuen                     | the statue          |
| Slottet                     | the Palace          |
| postkassen                  | the letter box      |
| supermarkedet               | the supermarket     |
| mange                       | plenty of           |
| torget                      | the marketplace     |
| å vende (-dte, -dt) tilbake | to return           |
| brillene                    | the spectacles      |
| vanskeligheten              | the difficulty      |
| noe                         | something           |
| reisesyken                  | the travel sickness |
| måltidet                    | the meal            |
| teateret                    | the theatre         |
| å ligge (lå, ligget)        | to be situated      |
| universitetet               | the university      |

### Exercise 31

Translate:

- 1 There's a statue in front of the Palace.
- 2 There's a letter box at the corner.
- 3 There's a supermarket next to the station.
- 4 There are plenty of flowers in the marketplace.

- 5 I had been in Norway since Christmas.
- 6 I had stayed there from January till April.
- 7 I had returned to London before Easter.
- 8 Can you read without your spectacles?
- 9 Only with great difficulty.
- 10 I'd like (to have) something for my travel sickness.
- 11 Don't eat between (the) meals!
- 12 The new theatre is situated behind the university.

### 38 Indefinite pronouns

Here are some useful indefinite pronouns. They are used either alone or in combination with nouns. Some of these pronouns have different forms according to gender and/or number:

|  |                         |
|--|-------------------------|
| <b>noen</b> ( <i>common sing.</i> )            | some(one), any(one)     |
| <b>noe</b> ( <i>neuter sing.</i> )             | some(thing), any(thing) |
| <b>noen</b> ( <i>plural</i> )                  | some, any               |
| <b>ingen</b> ( <i>common sing.</i> )           | no, no one, none        |
| <b>intet, ikke noe</b> ( <i>neuter sing.</i> ) | no, nothing             |
| <b>ingen, ikke noen</b> ( <i>plural</i> )      | no                      |
| <b>(en) annen</b> ( <i>common sing.</i> )      | another                 |
| <b>(et) annet</b> ( <i>neuter sing.</i> )      | another                 |
| <b>andre</b> ( <i>plural</i> )                 | other, others           |
| <b>all</b> ( <i>common sing.</i> )             | all                     |
| <b>alt</b> ( <i>neuter sing.</i> )             | all, everything         |
| <b>alle</b> ( <i>plural</i> )                  | all (of them), everyone |
| <b>en(hver)</b> ( <i>common sing.</i> )        | each, every, everyone   |
| <b>(et)hvert</b> ( <i>neuter sing.</i> )       | each, every             |

Note also:

|                  |                        |
|------------------|------------------------|
| <b>ingenting</b> | nothing                |
| <b>allting</b>   | everything             |
| <b>en, man</b>   | one, you, people, they |
| <b>mange</b>     | many                   |

Examples:

**Noen må gjøre det.**

Someone must do it.

**Har dere noe i rosa?**

Have you anything in pink?

**Ingen var til stede.**

No one was there.

**Det var ingenting igjen.**

There was nothing left.

**Vi hadde ikke noe annet valg.**

We had no other choice.

**En annen gang, under andre omstendigheter.**

Another time, under other circumstances.

**Han hadde mistet alle pengene (sine).**

He had lost all his money.

**Alle var til stede.**

All of them were present.

**Det var ikke verdt alt strevet.**

It wasn't worth all the trouble.

**Enhver idiot vet det.**

Every fool knows that.

**De koster 10 kroner hver.**

They cost 10 kroner each.

**Jeg nyter hvert øyeblikk.**

I enjoy every moment.

**Man (or En) skulle tro det.**

One (or You, We) should believe that.

Note that **litt** (a little) is often used (with a noun) instead of **noe**:

**Jeg kjøpte noen pølser, litt ost og litt frukt.**

I bought some sausages, some cheese and some fruit.

## Vocabulary

**å telle (-lte, lt)**

to count

**rik**

rich

## Exercise 32

Translate:

- 1 Does anyone here speak English?
- 2 Have you any good oranges?
- 3 They are all good, but some of them are better than the others.
- 4 Something is better than nothing.
- 5 You can't have everything.
- 6 He had counted every hour, every minute.
- 7 She asked each of them.
- 8 They say that he has been very rich.

## 39 More about numbers

Study the following numbers:

|     |                       |     |                         |
|-----|-----------------------|-----|-------------------------|
| 100 | (ett) hundre          | 200 | to hundre               |
| 101 | (ett) hundre og en    | 255 | to hundre og femogfemti |
| 110 | (ett) hundre og ti    |     |                         |
| 150 | (ett) hundre og femti | 300 | tre hundre              |



|       |                                 |               |               |
|-------|---------------------------------|---------------|---------------|
| 1 000 | (ett) tusen                     | 1 000 000     | en million    |
| 1 150 | ett tusen et<br>hundre og femti | 2 000 000     | to millioner  |
| 2 000 | to tusen                        | 1 000 000 000 | en milliard   |
|       |                                 | 2 000 000 000 | to milliarder |

NOTE: When counting, **hundre** and **tusen** take no plural ending: **to hundre**, **to tusen** etc. Used as nouns, however, they appear in the plural form: **tusener** og **atter tusener** 'thousands and thousands'.

Note the following collectives and ordinal expressions:

|                 |          |                   |             |
|-----------------|----------|-------------------|-------------|
| <b>et par</b>   | a couple | <b>én gang</b>    | once        |
| <b>et dusin</b> | a dozen  | <b>to ganger</b>  | twice       |
| <b>et snes</b>  | a score  | <b>tre ganger</b> | three times |

### Exercise 33

Complete the following, writing the answers in full:

- |                  |                             |
|------------------|-----------------------------|
| a) $150 + 100 =$ | d) $748 \times 12 =$        |
| b) $260 + 140 =$ | e) $450 \times 125 =$       |
| c) $310 + 575 =$ | f) $3\,570 \times 6\,830 =$ |

## 40 The weather

For obvious reasons the weather is a popular topic of conversation in Norway, as it is in England. Here are some useful expressions:

**Hvordan er været i dag?** What's the weather like today?

**Det er pent vær.** The weather's fine.

**Det er dårlig vær.** The weather's bad.

**Det er solskinn.** The sun's shining.

**Det er varmt.** It's warm.

**Det regner.** It's raining

**Det sner (or snør).** It's snowing.

**Det blåser.** It's windy.

**Det er tåket.** It's foggy.

**Det er kaldt.** It's cold.

**Det tiner (or tør).** It's thawing.

### Exercise 34

How would you describe the weather in Norwegian in the following situations?

- Let's go swimming.
- Let's stay at home.
- You need a raincoat.
- We're going to have a white Christmas.
- Hold on to your hat!
- Due to poor visibility you can easily get lost.
- I think you should take a warm overcoat.
- It's springtime.

## Vocabulary

til å være

utlendingen

å planlegge (-la, -lagt)

ganske

å gifte (-et, -et) seg med

under krigen

sjansen

poenget

altfor

ivrig

å mestre (-et, -et)

å bestemme (-mte, -mt)

for

the foreigner

to plan

quite

to marry

during the war

the chance

the point

far too

eager

to master

to decide

|                            |                      |
|----------------------------|----------------------|
| språkkurset                | the language course  |
| anstrengelsen              | the effort           |
| på tre måneder             | in three months      |
| bærbar                     | portable             |
| kassettpilleren            | the cassette player  |
| anledningen (til)          | the opportunity (to) |
| båndet                     | the tape             |
| å slå (slo, slått) av      | to switch off        |
| fjernsynet                 | the television       |
| midt i                     | in the middle of     |
| såpeoperaen                | the soap opera       |
| å studere (-te, -t)        | to study             |
| å reagere (-te, -t)        | to react             |
| usosial                    | unsociable           |
| oppførselen                | the behaviour        |
| forståelsesfull            | understanding        |
| å fortelle (-talte, -talt) | to tell              |
| planen                     | the plan             |
| like interessert           | just as interested   |

### Conversation

#### Norsk på tre måneder *Norwegian in three months*

- Herr Hansen** De snakker meget godt norsk til å være utlending, fru McLeod.  
*For a foreigner you speak Norwegian very well, Mrs McLeod.*
- Fru McLeod** Det er hyggelig av Dem å si det, herr Hansen. De skjønner, min mann og jeg hadde planlagt denne turen i lang tid før vi kom til Norge.  
*It's very kind of you to say so, Mr Hansen. You see, before coming to Norway my husband and I had been planning this tour for quite a long time.*

- Herr Hansen** Jeg forstår det. Men min nabo giftet seg med en engelsk pike under krigen, og selv tyve år senere hadde hun ikke lært å snakke norsk så godt som De gjør.  
*I see. But my neighbour married an English girl during the war, and even twenty years later she hadn't learnt to speak Norwegian as well as you do!*
- Fru McLeod** Kanskje De aldri hadde gitt henne en sjanse?  
*Maybe you'd never given her a chance?*
- Herr Hansen** Jeg tror De har et poeng der, fru McLeod. Vi nordmenn er altfor ivrige etter å vise at vi mestrer Deres språk.  
*I think you've got a point there, Mrs McLeod. We Norwegians are far too eager to show that we master your language.*
- Fru McLeod** Vi hadde hørt det. Derfor bestemte vi oss for å kjøpe et norsk språkkurs og gjøre et alvorlig forsøk på å lære språket på tre måneder.  
*So we'd heard. That's why we decided to buy a Norwegian language course and to make a serious effort to learn the language in three months.*
- Herr Hansen** Men hvordan lærte dere de norske r'ene og ø'ene og y'ene? Var det ikke svært vanskelig?  
*But how did you learn the Norwegian r's and ø's and y's? Wasn't that very difficult?*
- Fru McLeod** Jo, men vi kjøpte hver vår bærbare kassettpiller. Og så ofte som vi hadde anledning til det – fra tidlig om morgenen til sent om kvelden – lyttet vi til lydbåndene som var laget til språkkurset. Vi slo til og med av fjernsynet midt i såpeoperaen for å studere norsk!  
*Yes, but each of us bought a portable cassette player. And as often as we had the opportunity to*

→

do so – from early in the morning till late at night  
– we listened to the tapes made for the language  
course. We even switched off the television in the  
middle of soap operas to study Norwegian!

**Herr Hansen** **Men hvordan reagerte Deres familie og  
venner på en så 'usosial' oppførsel?**  
*But how did your family and your friends react to  
such 'unsociable' behaviour?*

**Fru McLeod** **Nåja, de var forståelsesfulle. Men vi hadde  
naturligvis fortalt dem om våre planer.**  
*Well, they were understanding. But of course we  
had told them about our plans.*

**Herr Hansen** **Dere hadde altså ingen problemer?**  
*So you had no problems?*

**Fru McLeod** **Vårt eneste problem var å finne kassett-  
spillerne når vi trengte dem. Våre barn var  
like interessert som vi i å lære norsk!**  
*Our only problem was to find the cassette players  
when we needed them. Our children were just as  
interested in learning Norwegian as we were!*

## Chapter 8

This chapter covers:

- three ways of talking about the future
- reflexive verbs (such as 'to enjoy oneself')
- the relative pronoun **som**, which translates 'who', 'whom', 'which' and 'that'
- how to say 'as ... as'
- how to join words and sentences using co-ordinating conjunctions: 'and', 'but', and so on

### 41 The future tense

Norwegian has three ways of expressing what we plan to do or what is going to happen in the future. They are by using:

a) the present tense of the principal verb (replacing the future tense or the continuous present in English):

**Noen mennesker tviler på at flyplassen noen gang blir ferdig.**

Some people doubt that the airport will ever be finished.

**Kommer du i morgen?** Are you coming tomorrow?

b) the expression **kommer til å**:

**Den kommer til å bli altfor dyr.** It's going to be too expensive.

c) the auxiliaries **skal** or **vil** and the infinitive of the principal verb:

**Jeg tror ikke de vil fullføre den.**

I don't think they will go through with it.

### Etter planen skal flypassen være ferdig i 1995.

According to the plan, the airport is to be finished in 1995.

In principle there is little difference between Norwegian and English in their ways of expressing the future. But as we have already mentioned, the English auxiliaries 'shall' and 'will' cannot automatically be translated by **skal** and **vil**. Note that the basic meaning of **skal** is that something is due to happen according to a decision or a plan: **Etter planen skal flypassen være ferdig i 1995.**

**Vil** is used to express what is going to happen (pure future): **Flypassen vil bli (or kommer til å bli) for dyr.** But it can also express desire or will: **Jeg vil komme.** 'I want to come.'

## Vocabulary

|                         |                     |
|-------------------------|---------------------|
| å avslutte (-et, -et)   | to finish           |
| arbeidet                | the work            |
| etterpå                 | afterwards          |
| ferdig                  | ready, finished     |
| om fem minutter         | in five minutes     |
| å gjøre (gjorde, gjort) | to do some shopping |
| noen innkjøp            |                     |
| derfra                  | from there          |
| hydrofoilen             | the hydrofoil       |
| moro                    | fun                 |
| ikke ... før            | not ... till        |

## Exercise 35

Translate:

- 1 First I shall finish my work.
- 2 Afterwards we shall have dinner.
- 3 The dinner will be ready in half an hour.

- 4 I am to leave in a few minutes.
- 5 I am going to do some shopping.
- 6 Tomorrow we shall go by plane to Stavanger.
- 7 From there we shall go by hydrofoil to Bergen.
- 8 It will be fun!
- 9 We won't be back till Sunday.

## 42 Reflexive verbs

Å **glede seg** 'to enjoy oneself' is a reflexive verb (i.e. the action is carried out by the subject on itself). Reflexive verbs are conjugated as follows:

Present tense

|      |          |      |         |              |             |              |
|------|----------|------|---------|--------------|-------------|--------------|
| jeg  | } gleder | meg  | } enjoy | } myself     |             |              |
| du   |          | deg  |         |              | you         | } yourself   |
| han  |          | seg  |         |              | he          | } himself    |
| hun  |          | seg  | she     | } enjoys     | } herself   |              |
| vi   |          | oss  | we      | } enjoy      | } ourselves |              |
| dere |          | dere | you     |              |             | } yourselves |
| de   | seg      | they |         | } themselves |             |              |

Past tense: **Jeg gledet meg**, etc. I enjoyed myself, etc.

Perfect tense: **Jeg har gledet meg**, etc. I have enjoyed myself, etc.

The reflexive pronoun **seg** is used in the 3rd person singular and plural. In the 1st and 2nd person singular and plural we use the object form of the personal pronouns (**meg**, **deg**, **oss**, **dere**). (See sec. 19.)

Reflexive verbs are much more common in Norwegian than in English. Here are some examples:

|             |              |
|-------------|--------------|
| å sette seg | to sit down  |
| å legge seg | to go to bed |

|               |                         |
|---------------|-------------------------|
| å hvile seg   | to rest                 |
| å strekke seg | to stretch              |
| å bøye seg    | to submit, to bend down |
| å kle på seg  | to get dressed          |
| å bekymre seg | to worry                |
| å skynde seg  | to hurry                |
| å forlove seg | to get engaged          |
| å gifte seg   | to get married          |
| å skille seg  | to get divorced         |
| å undre seg   | to wonder               |

Note that **meg selv** (**deg selv**, **seg selv** etc.) is only used for emphasis:

**Jeg vasker meg.** I wash myself/I get washed.

**Jeg vasker meg selv.** I wash myself (i.e. I do it myself).

Compare:

**Jeg vasker klærne selv.** I wash the clothes myself.

**Kjenn deg selv!** Know yourself!

Study the following examples:

**Han** [Mr Olsen] **bad henne om å vekke seg** [Mr Olsen] **kl. 8.**

He asked her to call him at 8 o'clock.

**Han** [Mr Olsen] **bad henne om å vekke ham** [Mr Hansen] **kl. 8.**

He asked her to call him at 8 o'clock.

Note that the reflexive pronoun **seg** must be used when referring back to the subject (**Han** = Mr Olsen).

## Vocabulary

|                                       |                    |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------|
| å legge (la, lagt) seg                | to go to bed       |
| å komme (kom, kommet) seg på arbeidet | to get off to work |
| tidsnok                               | in time            |
| i en fart                             | in a hurry         |

|  |                                   |
|--|-----------------------------------|
| å hygge (-et, -et)                     | to have a good time               |
| å slanke (-et, -et) seg                | to slim                           |
| å kvitte (-et, -et) seg med overflødig | to get rid of superfluous, excess |

## Exercise 36

A Conjugate in the present tense:

**Jeg setter meg (Jeg setter meg, du setter ... , etc.)**

B Translate:

- When do you go to bed?
- Usually we go to bed at half past eleven.
- The little children go to bed at half past seven.
- In the morning we would all like to rest a little longer.
- But we have to get off to work in time.
- We wash and dress in a hurry.
- Only on Sundays can we have a good time at the breakfast table.
- We don't need to slim to get rid of excess kilos!

## 43 The relative pronoun

In Norwegian a single relative pronoun **som** is used to refer back to various different nouns and pronouns, irrespective of their gender and number. Thus **som** can equate to the different English pronouns 'who', 'whom', 'which' and 'that':

**Damen som vil kjøpe huset, er nettopp kommet.**

The lady who wants to buy the house has just arrived.

**Vi trenger noen (som) vi kan stole på.**

We need someone (whom) we can trust.

**Disse fjelltoppene, som er de høyeste i Norge, heter Galdhøpiggen og Glittertind.**

These mountain tops, which are the highest in Norway, are called Galdhøpiggen and Glittertind.

**Jeg har kjøpt bøkene (som) du bad om.**

I have bought the books (that) you asked for.

As you can see from the second and the last examples above, the relative pronoun can sometimes be left out if it is not the subject of the relative clause. This also happens in English.

**Hvis** is the genitive form of **som**, but is little used except in (traditional) written language.

**Mannen hvis bil var blitt stjålet, meldte tyveriet til politiet.**

The man whose car had been stolen reported the theft to the police.

The less formal version would be: **Mannen som bilen var blitt stjålet fra ...**

Note that **som** is also used in combination with other pronouns, as in **den som, det som, hva som, alt som**:

**Den som gjorde det, må betale for det.**

Whoever did it must pay for it.

**Det (som) du sa, var sant.**

What you said was true.

**Hva som enn hender.**

Whatever happens.

**Alt det (som) du gjorde, var riktig.**

Everything you did was right.

## Vocabulary

|                         |                     |
|-------------------------|---------------------|
| i morgen                | this morning        |
| lyden, ståket           | the noise           |
| å vekke (-et, -et) noen | to wake somebody up |
| å kjenne (-nte, -nt)    | to know             |
| avisgutten              | the paper boy       |
| morgenavisen            | the morning paper   |

|   |                                 |
|---|---------------------------------|
| entrédøren                                | the front door                  |
| reportasjen                               | the report                      |
| bankrøveriet                              | the bank robbery                |
| da  | then                            |
| å slutte (-et, -et) seg til               | to join                         |
| å spise (-te, -t) frokost sammen med noen | to have breakfast with somebody |
| å sette (satte, satt) seg pengene         | to sit down the money           |
| å stjele (stjal, stjålet)                 | to steal                        |
| å ligge (låg, ligget)                     | to be situated                  |
| like ved siden av                         | just next to                    |

## Exercise 37

Translate:

- 1 This morning I heard a noise which woke me up.
- 2 From my window I saw a boy (whom) I knew very well.
- 3 It was the paper boy who brought the morning paper.
- 4 I took the newspaper, which was lying inside the front door.
- 5 The paper that I was reading had (lit. brought) a report on a bank robbery.
- 6 Then my wife, who usually gets up first, came to have breakfast with me.
- 7 She sat down at the breakfast table, and I told her what I had read in the newspaper.
- 8 The bank whose money was stolen was (situated) just next to the station.



## 44 More about comparison

The English comparison 'as ... as' is expressed by **like ... som** or **likså ... som** or **så ... som**:

**Hun er like** (or **likså**) **flink som sin bror.**

She is as clever as her brother.

**Disse veiene er ikke så bratte som veiene på Vestlandet.**

These roads aren't as steep as the roads in Western Norway.

**Kom og besøk meg så ofte (som) du kan.**

Come and see me as often as you can.

In the last sentence **som** can be omitted.

Some comparative forms can be used without any explicit comparison being made at all:

|                             |                                |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------------|
| <b>en yngre dame</b>        | a youngish (lit. younger) lady |
| <b>en eldre mann</b>        | an elderly (lit. older) man    |
| <b>i lengre tid</b>         | for quite a long time          |
| <b>en større sum penger</b> | a considerable sum of money    |
| <b>et mindre uhell</b>      | a minor accident               |
| <b>en bedre middag</b>      | a (very) good dinner           |

Some superlatives are used in a similar way to express a (fairly) high degree:

|                                   |                               |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| <b>med den største fornøyelse</b> | with the greatest of pleasure |
| <b>hans minste ønske</b>          | his slightest wish            |
| <b>i høyeste grad</b>             | in the highest degree         |
| <b>i den beste hensikt</b>        | from the best of motives      |

## Vocabulary

|                      |                      |
|----------------------|----------------------|
| <b>langrenn</b>      | cross-country skiing |
| <b>slalåm</b>        | slalom               |
| <b>utfor(renn)</b>   | downhill (skiing)    |
| <b>populær</b>       | popular              |
| <b>langs</b>         | along                |
| <b>kysten</b>        | the coast            |
| <b>kredittkortet</b> | the credit card      |

**lett, gjerne**  
**å godta (-tok, -tatt)**  
**middelaldrende**  
**å hoppe (-et, -et)**  
**gjerdet**  
**lettheten**  
**mistanken**

readily  
to accept  
middle-aged  
to jump  
the fence  
the ease  
the suspicion

## Exercise 38

*Translate:*

- 1 Cross-country skiing is as exciting as slalom and downhill.
- 2 Mountain tours are as popular as cruises along the coast.
- 3 This room is not as comfortable as the other one.
- 4 You can stay as long as you want.
- 5 Credit cards are not as readily accepted in Norway as in the USA and Canada.
- 6 An elderly lady is not as old as an old lady but she is older than a middle-aged lady.
- 7 He jumped over the fence with the greatest ease.
- 8 No one had the slightest suspicion.

## 45 Co-ordinating conjunctions

The so-called co-ordinating conjunctions – **og** 'and', **men** 'but', etc. – are used to connect words and sentences. They can express the following:

*Connection*

|                    |              |
|--------------------|--------------|
| <b>og</b>          | and          |
| <b>både ... og</b> | both ... and |

### Alternatives

**enten ... eller** either ... or  
**verken ... eller** neither ... nor

### Contrast

**men** but  
**mens** while

### Cause

**for** because

Examples:

**gutt og pike** boy and girl

**både han og hun** both he and she

**enten den store eller den lille**

either the big one or the small one

**verken for langsomt eller for fort**

neither too slowly nor too fast

**fattig, men stolt** poor but proud

**En lo, mens den andre gråt.**

One laughed, while the other cried.

**Jeg gikk ikke, for jeg var forkjølet.**

I didn't go because I had a cold.

## Vocabulary

|                         |                   |
|-------------------------|-------------------|
| pent, fint              | nice              |
| nokså, ganske           | fairly            |
| sentralt                | central           |
| nattklubben             | the nightclub     |
| badstuen                | the sauna         |
| svømmebassenget         | the swimming pool |
| å gi utsikt over        | to overlook       |
| å vende (-dte, -dt) mot | to face           |
| fred og ro              | peace and quiet   |

## Exercise 39

- 1 I'd like a room for me and my wife, something nice and fairly central but not too expensive.
- 2 I need neither a nightclub nor a sauna, but a swimming pool would be nice.
- 3 This room overlooks the park, while the other one faces the street.
- 4 I'll take this one, because I like peace and quiet.
- 5 You can either take a train or fly.

## Vocabulary

|                               |   |
|-------------------------------|---|
| innbydelsen                   | the invitation                                  |
| kjær                          | dear  |
| svigerinnen                   | the sister-in-law                               |
| slik en                       | such a  |
| deilig                        | lovely  |
| ikke noe å takke for          | don't mention it<br>(lit. nothing to thank for) |
| å lure (-te, -t) på           | to wonder                                       |
| å bli (ble, blitt) med        | to join   |
| akkurat nå                    | just now  |
| å heve (-et, -et)             | to cash   |
| reisesjekken                  | the traveller's cheque                          |
| reisebyrået                   | the travel agency                               |
| opplysningene (cpl.)          | the information                                 |
| freden                        | the peace                                       |
| roen                          | the quiet                                       |
| resten                        | the rest  |
| å erte (-et, -et)             | to tease  |
| vidunderlig                   | wonderful                                       |
| å ha (hadde, hatt) lyst (til) | would love (to)                                 |
| å tilgi (-gav, -gitt)         | to forgive                                      |
| koppen                        | the cup   |
| nydelig                       | delicious                                       |

|                                   |   |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| eplekaken                         | the apple tart  |
| å hente (-et, -et)                | to pick up  |
| å passe (-et, -et) på som en smed | to keep a close watch on (lit. watch like a blacksmith) |

## Conversation

### Innbydelse til en fottur i Nordmarka *Invitation to a walking tour in Nordmarka*

- Siri McLeod** Hei, Anthony! Dette er Siri.  
*Hello, Anthony! This is Siri.*
- Anthony McLeod** Hei, kjære svigerinne. Takk for i går, som dere sier i Norge. Det var sånn en deilig dag!  
*Hello, dear sister-in-law! Thank you for yesterday, as you say in Norway. It was such a lovely day!*
- Siri McLeod** Ikke noe å takke for. Det var så hyggelig å ha dere. Vi lurte på om dere hadde lyst til å bli med oss på en fottur i Nordmarka i dag?  
*Don't mention it! It was so nice having you. We wondered if you'd like to join us for a walk in Nordmarka today?*
- Anthony McLeod** Så hyggelig av dere, Siri. Men i dag har vi det altfor travelt.  
*How nice of you, Siri. But today we're too busy.*
- Siri McLeod** Travelt dere? Men dere er jo på ferie, ikke sant?  
*Busy, you? But you're on holiday, aren't you?*

**Anthony McLeod** Ja, men akkurat nå er Janice i banken for å heve noen reisesjekker. Og etterpå skal hun til reisebyrået for å hente billettene til Hurtigruten og for å få flere opplysninger om turen vår til Nord-Norge i neste uke.

*Yes, but just now Janice is in the bank cashing some travellers' cheques. And after that she's going to the travel agency to collect our tickets for the Coastal Express and to get some more information about our tour to Northern Norway next week.*

**Siri McLeod** Men det tar da ikke hele dagen!  
*But that doesn't take all day!*

**Anthony McLeod** Jeg vet det, men etterpå skal jeg møte Janice i byen for å gjøre noen flere innkjøp, og etter det ...

*I know, but after that I'm to meet Janice in town to do some more shopping, and after that ...*

**Siri McLeod** Jeg forstår. Og etter det skal dere spise lunsj, og etter det er dere så trette at dere trenger fred og ro resten av dagen!  
*I see. And after that you'll have lunch, and after that you'll be so tired that you'll need peace and quiet for the rest of the day!*

**Anthony McLeod** Ikke ert meg, Siri. Det er ikke det at vi ikke ønsker å se ditt vidunderlige Nordmarka, vet du. Vi har veldig lyst til det.

*Stop teasing me, Siri! It's not that we don't want to see your wonderful Nordmarka, you know. We'd love to!*

**Siri McLeod** Tilgi meg, Anthony. Hva med i morgen, da?

*Forgive me, Anthony. What about tomorrow, then?*

→

- Anthony McLeod** **Det er fint!**  
*That will be fine!*
- Siri McLeod** **OK, da. Og vær så snill å si til Janice at etter fotturen skal hun få en deilig kopp te og en nydelig eplekake på Holmenkollen hotell.**  
*OK, then. And please tell Janice that after the walk she'll get a nice cup of tea and a delicious apple tart at the Holmenkollen Hotel.*
- Anthony McLeod** **Ja, det skal jeg gjøre. Kunne dere komme og hente oss på hotellet vårt klokken 10?**  
*Yes, I will. Could you come and pick us up at our hotel at ten o'clock?*
- Siri McLeod** **Ja, og bli ikke sittende for lenge i hotellbaren i kveld, er du snill.**  
*Yes, and don't stay too long in the hotel bar tonight, will you?*
- Anthony McLeod** **Jeg skal be Janice passe på meg som en smed!**  
*I'll ask Janice to keep a close watch on me!*

## Chapter 9

In this chapter you will learn:

- some more conjunctions: the subordinating conjunctions, which introduce a subordinate clause
- more about word order, including the order of words in a subordinate clause
- the conditional tense, which often translates the English 'would'
- the use of **om** to mean 'whether' and **at** to mean 'that'
- some names of countries and nationalities, and the prepositions used with place names

### 46 More about conjunctions

The subordinating conjunctions are used to express relationships involving *time, cause, condition*, etc. The clause they introduce is known as a subordinate clause. Here are some common Norwegian conjunctions.

*Time*

|                          |                           |
|--------------------------|---------------------------|
| <b>da</b> when           | <b>før</b> before         |
| <b>når</b> when/whenever | <b>etterat</b> after      |
| <b>idet</b> as           | <b>siden</b> since        |
| <b>mens</b> while        | <b>inntil</b> till, until |

Note that the Norwegian conjunctions **da** and **når** are both translated by the English 'when'. Some guidance as to their use is therefore helpful for the English student.

**Da** is used to talk about something that happened once, in the past:

**Da vi kom hjem, spiste vi middag.**  
When we came home we had dinner.

**Når** expresses what usually happens:

**Når hun kommer på besøk, har hun alltid med seg godter til barna.**  
When (or Whenever) she comes to see us she always brings sweets for the children.

**Når** can also express what used to happen (regularly) in the past:

**Når hun kom på besøk, hadde hun alltid meg seg noen godter til barna.**  
When (or Whenever) she came to see us she always brought some sweets for the children.

**Når** is additionally used when we are talking about what is going to happen in the future:

**Når du kommer frem, må du sende meg et kort.**  
When you arrive you must send me a postcard.

If you find these 'rules' difficult to remember, don't forget the old rule of the thumb: **den gang** ('at that time') – **da**, but: **hver gang** ('every time') – **når**.

Here are some examples of the use of other time conjunctions.

**Idet jeg gikk over gaten, kom en stor varebil svingende inn i gaten fra venstre.**  
As I crossed the street a big van came swinging into the street from the left.

**Dette hendte meg to ganger mens jeg var i Norge.**  
This happened to me twice while I was in Norway.

**Jeg hadde hørt om trafikksituasjonen i Norge før jeg forlot England.**  
I had heard about the traffic situation in Norway before I left England.

**Det var verre enn jeg hadde fryktet.**  
It was worse than I had feared.

*Concession*  
**skjønt** } although  
**enda** }  
**selv om** } even if

**Enda han hadde hodepine, fortsatte han å arbeide.**  
Although he had a headache he went on working.

*Intention*  
**for at** so that, in order that

**Han gjorde det for at alle skulle bli glade.**  
He did it so that (or in order that) everybody should be happy.

*Consequence*  
**så at** } so that (as a result of which)  
**slik at** }

**Alt var blitt ordnet på forhånd, slik at ingenting gikk galt.**  
Everything had been arranged beforehand so that (as a result) nothing went wrong.

*Comparison*  
**så (... som)** as ... as  
**som om** as if  
**jo ... desto** } the ... the  
**jo ... jo** }  
**enn** than

**De kom så snart (som) de kunne.**  
They came as soon as they could.

**Han lot som om ingenting hadde hendt.**  
He acted as if nothing had happened.

**Jo før, jo bedre.**  
The sooner the better.

*Cause*

**fordi** because  
**ettersom** as  
**siden** since

**Jeg må ligge i sengen i dag fordi jeg ikke føler meg bra.**  
I have to stay in bed today because I'm not feeling well.

**Jeg er ikke overrasket, siden du har arbeidet så hardt i det siste.**

I'm not surprised since you've been working so hard lately.

*Condition*

**hvis**  
**dersom** } if

**hvis ikke** if not  
**med mindre** unless

**Hvis (or Dersom) du trenger en bil, kan du leie en.**  
If you need a car you can hire one.

**Jeg vil ikke gjøre det med mindre jeg må.**  
I won't do it unless I have to.

## Vocabulary

|                            |                     |
|----------------------------|---------------------|
| neste år                   | next year           |
| å si (sa, sagt) adjø til   | to say goodbye to   |
| drosjen                    | the taxi            |
| vi ville nødig             | we'd rather not     |
| å gå (gikk, gått) glipp av | to miss             |
| muligheten                 | the possibility     |
| å være redd (for)          | to be afraid        |
| å angre (-et, -et)         | to regret           |
| trett                      | tired               |
| å synes (-tes)             | to think            |
| umaken verdt               | worthwhile          |
| hjemreisen                 | the journey home    |
| så lett som mulig          | as easy as possible |

## Exercise 40

*Insert the right conjunction into the following sentences:*

- 1 (When) jeg er i Oslo, besøker jeg alltid Munch-Museet.
- 2 (When) jeg var i Oslo i fjor, besøkte jeg Munch-Museet.
- 3 (When) jeg kommer til Oslo neste år, skal jeg besøke Munch-Museet.
- 4 Jeg besøkte Munch-Museet (while) jeg var i Oslo.
- 5 (As) jeg kom inn i museet, møtte jeg noen venner.
- 6 (After) vi hadde sett bildene, spiste vi lunsj i restauranten.
- 7 (Before) vi forlot restauranten, sa vi adjø til våre venner.
- 8 (Because) vi ville se Vigelandsparken, tok vi en drosje.
- 9 (Since) vi ikke hadde sett den før, ville vi nødig gå glipp av denne muligheten.
- 10 (If) vi ikke så den denne gangen, er jeg redd vi ville angre det.
- 11 (Even if) vi var litt trette, synes jeg det var umaken verdt.
- 12 (In order that) hjemreisen skulle bli så lett som mulig, hadde vi allerede pakket koffertene.

## 47 More about word order

You have already seen that the verb always comes before the subject in questions. This is called inversion. Inversion also takes place in main clauses preceded by a subordinate clause – as you saw in the examples in sec. 46:

**Da vi kom hjem** (*subord. clause*), **spiste vi middag** (*main clause*).

**Enda han hadde hodepine, fortsatte han å arbeide.**

But if the main clause comes first, there is no inversion:

**Vi spiste middag da vi kom hjem.**

**Han fortsatte å arbeide enda han hadde hodepine.**

Note also that the subject of the main clause is placed between the auxiliary and the principal verb in the compound tenses:

**Da vi kom hjem, hadde han spist middag.**

When we came home he had had dinner.

**Når vi kommer hjem, vil vi spise middag.**

When we come home we shall have dinner.

Inversion also takes place after direct speech and quoted statements:

**'Hold deg fast i pelsen min,' sa han.**

'Hold on to my fur,' he said.

**Det er et eventyr, forstår du.**

It's a fairy tale, you see.

## Vocabulary

|                       |                      |
|-----------------------|----------------------|
| varene                | the goods            |
| til utlandet          | abroad               |
| pakkingen             | the packing          |
| faktoren              | the factor           |
| å pakke (-et, -et)    | to pack              |
| fabrikken             | the factory          |
| de blir håndtert      | they are handled     |
| å nå (-dde, -dd)      | to reach             |
| underrette (-et, -et) | to inform            |
| fabrikanten           | the manufacturer     |
| med én gang           | at once              |
| et fullstendig vrak   | a complete write-off |
| skaden                | the damage           |
| betydelig             | considerable         |

**det er ingen vits i**

**å produsere (-te, -t)**

**å bli solgt**

**til en rimelig pris**

**innen**

**rimelig**

**tiden, tidsperioden**

**å besvare (-te, -t)**

**å stille (-te, -t) spørsmål**

**mye, atskillig**

**uhellet**

**å hende (-dte, -dt)**

**å rapportere (-te, -t)**

**forsikringselskapet**

there is no point in

to produce

to be sold

at a fair price

within

reasonable

the period of time

to answer

to ask questions

a lot

the accident

to occur

to report

the insurance company

## Exercise 41

*Translate:*

- 1 When we send goods abroad, packing is an important factor.
- 2 After the goods are packed in the factory, they are never handled again until they reach the destination.
- 3 If we find that something is wrong with the goods we must inform the manufacturers at once.
- 4 Although the car was not a complete write-off, the damage was considerable.
- 5 There is no point in producing goods unless they can be sold at a fair price within a reasonable period of time.
- 6 'I'll answer your questions if I can,' she said.
- 7 Asking questions is a lot easier than answering them, you know.
- 8 If an accident occurs, you must report the damage to the insurance company.



## 48 The conditional tense

This tense is like the English 'would + infinitive' and is formed with **skulle** or **ville** (see sec. 29) followed by the infinitive of the principal verb:

**Hun ville** (or **skulle**) **komme hvis hun kunne.**

She would come if she could.

**Hvis hun ikke kunne komme, skulle** (or **ville**) **hun ringe meg.**

If she couldn't come she would give me a ring.

**Hvis jeg var deg, ville jeg ringe henne.**

If I were you I would give her a ring.

Note also the use of the conditional in polite requests, the equivalent of the English 'I'd like':

**Jeg skulle ha noen konvolutter, et lokalkart ...**

I'd like some envelopes, a map of the area ...

**Jeg ville gjerne ha litt te.**

I'd like some tea.

## Vocabulary

|                               |                            |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------|
| drosjen                       | the taxi                   |
| betingelsene                  | the terms                  |
| akseptabel                    | acceptable                 |
| tilbudet                      | the proposal               |
| (be)stjale (-stjal, -stjålet) | to steal                   |
| å bli bestjålet               | to have one's money stolen |
| å tilkalle (-lte, -lt)        | to call                    |
| politiet                      | the police                 |
| badedrakten                   | the swimsuit               |
| T-skjorten                    | the tee-shirt              |
| shortsen                      | the pair of shorts         |

## Exercise 42

A Answer the questions as follows:

**Hva ville du gjøre hvis du vant det store lodd?**

What would you do if you won the big prize?  
(tour the world)

Model answer:

**Hvis jeg vant det store lodd, ville jeg dra på jordomseiling.**

- 1 **Hva ville du gjøre hvis bussen var forsinket?**  
(take a taxi)
- 2 **Hva ville du gjøre hvis du ikke hadde penger?**  
(use my credit card)
- 3 **Hva ville herr Hansen gjøre hvis betingelsene ikke var akseptable?** (ask for a new proposal)
- 4 **Hva ville din engelske venn gjøre hvis han hadde mye tid?** (learn Norwegian)
- 5 **Hva ville du gjøre hvis du ble bestjålet?**  
(call the police)

B Translate:

I'd like a swimsuit, a tee-shirt and a pair of shorts.

## 49 More about 'if' clauses

You've just seen how **hvis** is used in conditional sentences to express 'if'. But 'if' is also expressed by **om** when it is the equivalent of 'whether':

**De spurte henne om hun kunne komme.**

They asked her if (i.e. whether) she could come.

**Hun visste ikke om det ville bli mulig for henne å komme.**

She didn't know whether it would be possible for her to come.

## 50 'That' clauses

'That' clauses are formed in Norwegian in the same way as in English, with or without the conjunction **at** 'that'.

**Jeg visste ikke (at) du var kommet.**

I didn't know (that) you had arrived.

**De fortalte oss at det ikke var sant.**

They told us (that) it wasn't true.

## Vocabulary

|                             |                     |
|-----------------------------|---------------------|
| <b>prisen</b>               | the price           |
| <b>å være redd for (at)</b> | to be afraid (that) |
| <b>så mye</b>               | that much           |
| <b>å håpe (-et, -et)</b>    | to hope             |
| <b>å senke (-et, -et)</b>   | to lower            |
| <b>å passe (-et, -et)</b>   | to fit              |
| <b>å prøve (-de, -d)</b>    | to try              |

## Exercise 43

*Translate:*

- 1 I think (that) the price is too high.
- 2 I am afraid (that) I cannot pay that much.
- 3 I hope (that) you will lower the price.
- 4 I wonder whether these shoes will fit me.
- 5 Can I try them on and see if they fit?

## 51 Countries and nationalities

Here are the names of some countries, most of them European:

|   |                                    |
|---|------------------------------------|
| <b>Amerika</b> America                        | <b>Kina</b> China                  |
| <b>Belgia</b> Belgium                         | <b>Nederland</b> Netherlands       |
| <b>Canada</b> Canada                          | <b>Norge</b> Norway                |
| <b>Danmark</b> Denmark                        | <b>Polen</b> Poland                |
| <b>England</b> England                        | <b>Portugal</b> Portugal           |
| <b>Finland</b> Finland                        | <b>Russland</b> Russia             |
| <b>De forente stater</b><br>The United States | <b>Skottland</b> Scotland          |
| <b>Frankrike</b> France                       | <b>Spania</b> Spain                |
| <b>Hellas</b> Greece                          | <b>Storbritannia</b> Great Britain |
| <b>India</b> India                            | <b>Sveits</b> Switzerland          |
| <b>Irland (Eire)</b> Ireland                  | <b>Sverige</b> Sweden              |
| <b>Italia</b> Italy                           | <b>Tyskland</b> Germany            |
| <b>Japan</b> Japan                            | <b>Ungarn</b> Hungary              |
|   | <b>Østerrike</b> Austria           |

'Europe' itself is **Europa**.

The adjectives denoting nationality are written without a capital letter and end in **-sk**: **amerikansk** 'American', **belgisk** 'Belgian', **dansk** 'Danish', **engelsk** 'English', etc.

Note particularly: **kanadisk** (with a **k**) 'Canadian', but: **Canada** (with a **c**) 'Canada'. And **eupeisk** is 'European'.

The corresponding nouns (again without a capital letter) mostly end in **-e**, **-er** or **-mann**:

|                                 |                                    |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| <b>(en) belgier</b> (a) Belgian | <b>(en) italiener</b> (an) Italian |
| <b>(en) danske</b> (a) Dane     | <b>(en) svenske</b> (a) Swede      |
| <b>(en) engelskmann</b>         | <b>(en) franskmann</b>             |
| (a) Englishman                  | (a) Frenchman                      |

## 52 I and på with geographical names

To learn the correct use of Norwegian prepositions is not easy, even for a native of Norway. This applies particularly to the use of **i** 'in' and **på** 'at', 'on', in front of geographical names. But we can give you a few guidelines, to be supplemented by your own observations.

*Foreign towns, countries and continents*

I is normally used with these:

**i London, i Danmark, i Storbritannia, i Europa**

But before names of islands we generally use **på**:

**på Grønland (Greenland), på Island (Iceland), på Cuba.**

*Norwegian towns and places*

I is generally used with coastal towns:

**i Bergen, i Haugesund, i Tromsø**

På is used with inland towns:

**på Hamar, på Kongsvinger, på Lillehammer**

Small places usually appear with **på**:

**på Roa, på Tynset, på Elverum**

But names of places ending in **-dal, -elv, -vik** generally appear with **i**:

**i Oppdal, i Ulvik, i Målselv.**

*Norwegian districts and regions*

These normally appear with **i**:

**i Finnmark, i Hordaland, i Østfold, i Østerdalen,  
i Telemark, i Hallingdal**

But there are important exceptions, such as:

**på Østlandet, på Vestlandet, på Toten, på Ringerike.**

## Vocabulary

for eksempel

maksimumtemperaturen

innlandet

varmt

Nord-Norge

Sør-Norge

for instance

the maximum temperature

(the) inland, the interior

hot

Northern Norway

Southern Norway

## Exercise 44

A Translate:

- 1 On the coast, for instance in Bodø and in Bergen, it is not as cold in the winter and not as warm in the summer as in Oslo and in Kongsberg.
- 2 In other parts of the country, for instance in Finnmark, in Valdres and in Østerdalen, the winter is very long.
- 3 You will find the highest maximum temperatures in the interior, for instance in Telemark and in Hallingdal. But sometimes it can be as hot in Northern Norway as in Southern Norway – in Sørlandet and in Østlandet.

B Give these places in Norwegian, with the corresponding adjectives and nouns of nationality (Model answer: *Belgia - belgisk - en belgier*):

- |           |          |
|-----------|----------|
| 1 Sweden  | 5 Italy  |
| 2 England | 6 Europe |
| 3 Canada  | 7 Japan  |
| 4 America |          |

C Fill in either *i* or *på*

- Paris, - Java, - New Zealand, - Australia,
- Ålandsøyene (the Åland Islands) - Tromsø,
- Haugesund, -Kongsvinger, - Hordaland,
- Vestlandet

## Vocabulary

|                                |                     |
|--------------------------------|---------------------|
| å ønske (-et, -et)             | to wish             |
| å ligne (-et, -et)             | to be like          |
| seilbåten                      | the sailing boat    |
| å reise (-te, -t) jorden rundt | to tour the world   |
| fjern                          | far-off             |
| uoppdaget                      | unexplored          |
| kulturen                       | the civilisation    |
| kusinen                        | the (female) cousin |
| være i stand til               | to be able to       |
| levemåten                      | the way of life     |
| helgen                         | the weekend         |
| leksene (pl.)                  | the homework        |
| fetteren                       | the (male) cousin   |
| treneren                       | the coach           |
| legen                          | the doctor          |
| å støtte (-et, -et)            | to support          |
| å reise (-te, -t)              | to travel           |
| å vinne (vant, vunnet)         | to win              |
| å ta motet fra                 | to discourage       |
| å slanke (-et, -et) seg        | to slim             |
| godtene (pl.)                  | the sweets          |
| å trene (-te, -t)              | to train            |
| lykkelig, glad                 | happy               |
| så mye                         | that much           |
| helsen                         | the health          |

## Conversation

### Hvem ville du ligne?

*Whom would you want to be like?*

- Hanna** Hvem ville du ligne, David, hvis du kunne velge?  
*Whom would you want to be like, David, if you had the choice?*
- David** Jeg ville ligne Fridtjof Nansen eller Thor Heyerdahl.  
*I'd want to be like Fridtjof Nansen or Thor Heyerdahl.*
- Hanna** Og hva ville du gjøre?  
*And what would you do?*
- David** Jeg ville bygge en stor seilbåt. Jeg ville reise jorden rundt. Jeg ville se fjerne land og studere uutforskede kulturer. Jeg ville skrive bøker om det, og jeg ville bli rik!  
*I'd build a big sailing boat. I'd tour the world. I'd see far-off countries and study unexplored civilisations. I'd write books about it, and I'd get rich!*
- Hanna** Jeg er lei for det, kjære fetter, men jeg tror ikke du noensinne vil være i stand til å gjøre alt det.  
*I'm sorry, dear cousin, but I don't think you would ever be able to do all that.*
- David** Hvorfor ikke?  
*Why not?*
- Hanna** Fordi du aller først ville bli nødt til å forandre din levemåte, stå opp tidligere, ta en kald dusj hver morgen, gå på ski i fjellene hver helg, ikke se så ofte på fjernsyn og gjøre hjemleksene dine bedre!

→

*Because, first of all, you'd have to change your way of life: get up earlier, take a cold shower every morning, go skiing in the mountains every weekend, watch television less often and do your homework better!*

**David** **Og du, min kjære kusine, hvem ville du ligne?**  
*And you, my dear cousin, whom would you want to be like?*

**Hanna** **Jeg ville ligne Grete Waitz. Jeg ville ha mine egne trenere og leger rundt meg og en snill ektemann til å støtte meg. Jeg ville reise en hel del, og jeg ville vinne New York Marathon ti ganger. Jeg ville skrive bøker om det, og jeg ville bli rik!**

*I'd want to be like Grete Waitz. I'd have my own coaches and doctor around me and a kind husband to support me. I'd travel a lot, and I'd win the New York Marathon ten times. I'd write books about it, and I'd get rich!*

**David** **Jeg ønsker ikke å ta motet fra deg, Hanna, men du ville aldri klare å gjøre det.**  
*I don't want to discourage you, Hanna, but you would never be able to do that.*

**Hanna** **Hvorfor ikke?**  
*Why not?*

**David** **Fordi, som du sa, du ville bli nødt til å forandre din levemåte. Du ville bli nødt til å slanke deg, spise mindre godter og mer grønnsaker og frukt, trene i minst tre timer om dagen og gå til sengs senest klokken ti.**  
*Because, as you said, you'd have to change your way of life. You'd have to slim, eat fewer sweets and more vegetables and fruit, train for at least three hours a day and go to bed at ten o'clock at the latest!*

**Hanna** **Tror du vi ville bli lykkeligere om vi forandret levemåten vår så mye?**  
*Do you think we'd be happier if we changed our way of life that much?*

**David** **Det vet jeg ikke. Men vi ville sikkert få en bedre helse!**  
*I don't know. But we would certainly be healthier (lit. be in better health)!*

## Chapter 10

In Chapter 10 you will meet:

- a new verb form, the passive, and some verbs which always appear in the passive form
- the present participle (the '-ing' form in English) and ways in which it is used
- some further uses of the prepositions **i**, **på** and **om**

### 53 The passive voice

The passive is often used when we are less interested in who did the action than in the object of it. For example: 'The house was painted', 'The road had been widened'.

In Norwegian the passive is composed of the auxiliary **bli** and the past participle of the principal verb. The agent or doer of the action, if mentioned, is preceded by the preposition **av** 'by'.

The passive voice can be used in all the tenses:

|                       |   |
|-----------------------|---|
| <i>Present tense:</i> | <b>Huset blir malt.</b> The house is (being) painted.           |
| <i>Past tense:</i>    | <b>Huset ble malt.</b> The house was (being) painted.           |
| <i>Perfect tense:</i> | <b>Huset er blitt malt.</b> The house has been painted.         |
| <i>Pluperfect:</i>    | <b>Huset var blitt malt.</b> The house had been painted.        |
| <i>Future:</i>        | <b>Huset skal/vil bli malt.</b> The house will be painted.      |
| <i>Conditional:</i>   | <b>Huset skulle/ville bli malt.</b> The house would be painted. |

**Huset var malt.** The longer form given above is used to emphasise the action; this shorter form emphasises the result.

NOTE: In the perfect tense we often say **Huset er malt** and in the pluperfect

As an alternative to the forms shown above we have the so-called '**s-passiv**'. It is used mostly in the written language and occurs most often in the following tenses:

|                       |  |
|-----------------------|--|
| <i>Present tense:</i> | <b>Huset males.</b> The house is (being) painted.            |
| <i>Future:</i>        | <b>Huset skal/vil males.</b> The house will be painted.      |
| <i>Conditional:</i>   | <b>Huset skulle/ville males.</b> The house would be painted. |

After modal auxiliaries (sec. 29) the **s-passiv** is commonly used in colloquial speech as well as in written language and is even preferred to the longer form:

**Huset bør males.** The house should be painted.  
**Arbeidet må gjøre.** The work has to be done.

**Billetter kan kjøpes ved inngangen.**  
Tickets can be bought at the entrance.

### 54 Active verbs with a passive form

Some very useful verbs have an active meaning but a passive form, for example:

|                               |                                       |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| <b>å synes</b> to think, seem | <b>å trives</b> to thrive, feel happy |
| <b>å finnes</b> to be, exist  | <b>å minnes</b> to remember           |
| <b>å lykkes</b> to succeed    |                                       |

Remember the expression **det finnes** 'there is/are' (sec. 37).

In the past tense **-tes** or **-des** is added to the stem of these verbs: **syntes**, **fantes** (note the vowel change), **lyktes**, **trivdes**, **mintes**. The past participle has the same form as the infinitive.

Examples:

**Jeg synes du skulle lese denne boken.**  
I think you should read this book.

**Hun syntes å være ganske fornøyd.**  
She seemed (to be) quite content.

**Det fantes ingen annen utvei.**  
There was no other way out.

**Det har lykket ham å nå sitt mål.**  
He has succeeded in reaching his goal.

**Vi vil minnes de gamle gode dager.**  
We shall remember the good old days.

**De trodde du ville trives i den nye jobben (din).**  
They thought you would be happy in your new job.

## Vocabulary

|                                    |                            |
|------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| <b>Nobelkomiteen</b>               | the Nobel Committee        |
| <b>formannen</b>                   | the chairman               |
| <b>å overrekke (-rakte, -rakt)</b> | to hand out                |
| <b>å vinne (vant, vunnet)</b>      | to win                     |
| <b>gangen</b>                      | the time                   |
| <b>restbeløpet</b>                 | the arrears                |
| <b>innen fristens utløp</b>        | within the prescribed term |
| <b>å synes synd på</b>             | to feel sorry for          |

## Exercise 45

A Put the following into the passive:

- 1 Nobelkomiteens formann overrekker Fredsprisen.
- 2 Grete Waitz har vunnet New York Marathon ni ganger.
- 3 Kunden betalte restbeløpet innen fristens utløp.
- 4 Vi vil ikke lenger produsere denne stolen.

B Complete the sentences by translating the English verb in brackets:

- 1 **Jeg håper du vil** (succeed).
- 2 **De (felt) synd på ham.**
- 3 **Det er det beste som** (is).
- 4 **Vi (meet) igjen ved neste korsvei.**

## 55 The present participle

The present participle (in English the '-ing' form) is formed by adding **-ende** to the stem of the verb:

**arbeidende** working                      **sovende** sleeping  
**løpende** running                         **hoppende** jumping

Note that **-d-** in **-ende** is not pronounced.

The present participle is not used to form a continuous tense as in English (sec. 8). It is mostly used as an adjective or an adverb:

**en underholdende bok** an entertaining book  
**brennende varm** burning hot

sometimes as a noun:

**den besøkende** the visitor  
**den ansvarshavende** the person in charge

Typical of Norwegian is the use of the present participle after verbs like **komme** 'come', **gå** 'go', **stå** 'stand', **ligge** 'lie' and **bli** 'stay':

**De kom gående/kjørende/løpende.**

They came walking/driving/running or They walked/drove/ran up.



**Han gikk haltende av sted.**  
He set off limping *or* He limped off.

**Hun satt sørgende igjen.**  
She was left mourning.

**Vi ble boende der i noen uker.**  
We stayed there for some weeks.

In English the present participle is used more often than in Norwegian. It sometimes has to be translated by an infinitive or a subordinate clause or by another construction:

**Han så henne komme** (*infinitive*).  
He saw her coming.

**Å se er å tro** (*infinitives*).  
Seeing is believing.

**Jeg ser frem til å høre fra deg** (*infinitive*).  
I look forward to hearing from you.

**Han brakk benet mens han spilte fotball** (*subord. clause*).  
He broke his leg while playing football.

**Da vi kom inn i rommet** (*subord. clause*), **fant vi ingen til stede.**  
Entering the room, we found nobody there.

**De stod der og så på hverandre** (*co-ord. clause*).  
They stood there looking at each other.

## Vocabulary

|                            |               |
|----------------------------|---------------|
| å renne (rant, rent)       | to run        |
| vannet                     | the water     |
| å fly/flyge (fløy, fløyet) | to fly        |
| fuglen                     | the bird      |
| å falle (falt, falt)       | to fall       |
| å vokse (-te, -t)          | to grow       |
| markedet                   | the market    |
| å skuffe (-et, -et)        | to disappoint |
| å krype (krøp, krøpet)     | to crawl      |
| mot                        | towards       |

|                             |                      |
|-----------------------------|----------------------|
| å bli (ble, blitt)          | to remain            |
| å fortsette (-satte, -satt) | to keep on, continue |
| å insistere (-te, -t)       | to insist            |
| ved å                       | by                   |
| å studere (-te, -t)         | to study             |
| på                          | (with)in             |
| å svømme (-te, -t)          | to swim              |
| å seile (-te, -t)           | to sail              |

## Exercise 46

*A Translate:*

- 1 running water
- 2 a flying bird
- 3 falling prices
- 4 a growing market
- 5 a disappointing answer

*B Translate:*

- 1 Two men came crawling towards him.
- 2 The little boy went away crying.
- 3 We remained sitting.
- 4 We heard her singing.
- 5 Having waited for half an hour we saw them leaving the house.
- 6 If you keep on insisting, I shall do it.
- 7 By studying a little every day, you will learn Norwegian in three months.
- 8 Do you like swimming and sailing?

## 56 Compound words

Typical of Norwegian is the almost unlimited possibility of making compound words, particularly nouns. New words are made as required by adding one or two words in front of or after existing words:

|                             |                                   |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <b>jakthunden</b>           | the hunting dog                   |
| <b>hundehalsbåndet</b>      | the dog collar                    |
| <b>fabrikkarbeideren</b>    | the factory worker                |
| <b>arbeidsbetingelser</b>   | working conditions                |
| <b>skolebarna</b>           | the schoolchildren                |
| <b>barneoppdragelsen</b>    | the education of children         |
| <b>syttendemaitoget</b>     | the seventeenth of May procession |
| <b>fødselsdagspresanger</b> | birthday presents                 |
| <b>nyttårshilsener</b>      | New Year greetings                |
| <b>sjøfartsnasjonen</b>     | the shipping nation               |
| <b>handelsflåten</b>        | the merchant fleet                |
| <b>fiskevann</b>            | (good) lakes for fishing          |
| <b>snødekt</b>              | snow-covered                      |
| <b>å forhåndsbestille</b>   | to book in advance                |

As you can see, the compound words are joined together without any hyphen, but sometimes an **-e-** is inserted (**hundehalsbåndet**, **barneoppdragelsen**) or an **-s-** (**arbeidsbetingelser**, **nyttårshilsener**).

## Vocabulary

|                                   |                       |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------|
| <b>å kreve (-de, -d)</b>          | to demand             |
| <b>lønnforhøyelsen</b>            | the wage increase     |
| <b>å glede (-et, -et) seg til</b> | to look forward to    |
| <b>slektningene</b>               | the relations         |
| <b>i ganske lang tid</b>          | for quite a long time |

## Exercise 47

Translate:

- 1 A fine hunting dog with a nice dog collar.
- 2 The factory workers demanded a considerable wage increase and better working conditions.
- 3 The schoolchildren are looking forward to the seventeenth of May procession.
- 4 I have sent birthday presents and New Year greetings to all my friends and relatives.
- 5 For quite a long time Norway has been one of the leading shipping nations of the world with a considerable merchant fleet.
- 6 Norway has snow-covered mountain tops and many good lakes for fishing.

## 57 More about *i* and *på*

*I* 'in' and *på* 'on, 'at', are used to express location in a place, not only in connection with geographical names (sec. 52) but with other nouns as well. Examples:

|                                 |                             |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <b>Vi arbeider på et kontor</b> | We are working in an office |
| <b>på et lager</b>              | in a storehouse             |
| <b>på en gård</b>               | on a farm                   |
| <b>i en bank</b>                | in a bank                   |
| <b>i en butikk</b>              | in a shop                   |
| <b>i et firma</b>               | in a firm                   |
| <b>Vi er på skolen</b>          | We are at school            |
| <b>på et møte</b>               | at a meeting                |
| <b>på landet</b>                | in the country              |
| <b>i byen</b>                   | in town                     |

|       |   |        |   |
|-------|---|--------|---|
| Vi er | i kirken<br>i selskap<br>i stuen                              | We are | at church<br>at a party<br>in the sitting<br>room                         |
|       | i entréen<br>i første etasje                                  |        | in the entrance<br>on the<br>ground floor                                 |
|       | i annen etasje<br>på kjøkkenet<br>på badet<br>på soveværelset |        | on the first floor<br>in the kitchen<br>in the bathroom<br>in the bedroom |

Note that **i** is often used with neuter and **på** with common gender nouns, particularly in connection with names of the different parts of a house.

**I** and **på** are also used to express motion towards a place with an activity in mind:

|        |   |       |   |
|--------|---|-------|---|
| Vi går | på skolen<br>på kontoret<br>på arbeidet<br>på kino<br>på konsert<br>på ski<br>i byen<br>i butikken<br>i banken<br>i kirken<br>i teater<br>i selskap | We go | to school<br>to the office<br>to work<br>to the cinema<br>to a concert<br>skiing<br>to town<br>shopping<br>to the bank<br>to church<br>to the theatre<br>to a party |
|--------|---|-------|---|

## 58 The use of *om*

**Om** can be either a preposition ('about', 'for') or, as you have seen (sec. 49), a conjunction ('if', 'whether'). Here are some examples of **om** used as a preposition:

**De fortalte oss om ulykken.** They told us about the accident.  
**Vi hadde lest om det i avisen.**

We had read about it in the newspaper.

**Visste du om det?** Did you know about it?  
**Han bad meg om penger.** He asked me for money.  
**Spurte du henne om råd?** Did you ask her for advice?

**Om** used as a conjunction:

**Jeg undres (på) om du kan hjelpe meg?**  
I wonder if (or whether) you can help me?

**Vi vet ikke om det er sant eller ikke.**  
We don't know whether it's true or not.

## Vocabulary

|                        |                          |
|------------------------|--------------------------|
| å regne (-et, -et)     | to calculate, to do sums |
| gjesten                | the guest                |
| vertinnen              | the hostess              |
| å vite (visste, visst) | to know                  |
| jeg vet                | I know                   |
| å rø(y)ke (-te, -t)    | to smoke                 |
| sikker                 | sure                     |

## Exercise 48

A Complete with the right prepositions:

- Vi arbeider – et kontor – byen.
- De arbeider – en gård – landet.
- Han arbeider – et lager, hun arbeider – en butikk.
- Barna går – skolen.
- skolen lærer de å lese, skrive og regne.
- I går gikk vi – selskap. Gjestene var – stuen – første etasje.
- Vertinnen var – kjøkkenet og barna var – soveværelset.

- 8 Liker du å gå – konsert?  
 9 Går dere ofte i kirken?  
 B Translate:  
 1 What did they talk about?  
 2 I don't know anything about it.  
 3 He asked her if she smoked.  
 4 She asked him for a cigarette.  
 5 He was not sure whether he had any cigarettes.

## Vocabulary

|                            |                     |
|----------------------------|---------------------|
| trafikken                  | the traffic         |
| en hårsbredd               | a hair's breadth    |
| å kjøre (-te, -t) over     | to run over         |
| å passe (-et, -et) seg for | to look out for     |
| gal                        | crazy               |
| bilføreren                 | the (car) driver    |
| grønn (grønt)              | green               |
| idioten                    | the idiot           |
| susende                    | dashing             |
| å huske (-et, -et)         | to remember         |
| smart                      | smart, clever       |
| pingvinen                  | the penguin         |
| Antarktis                  | the Antarctic       |
| å unngå (-gikk, -gått)     | to avoid            |
| å drepe (-te, -t)          | to kill             |
| selen                      | the seal            |
| å hoppe (-et, -et)         | to jump             |
| sjøen                      | the sea             |
| å fange (-et, -et)         | to catch            |
| å ta (tok, tatt)           | to take             |
| tåpelig                    | silly               |
| tanken                     | the thought         |
| bare tanken på             | the mere thought of |
| vettskremt                 | terrified           |

|                              |                          |
|------------------------------|--------------------------|
| sjokkerende                  | shocking                 |
| opplevelsen                  | the experience           |
| rattet                       | the wheel                |
| forbannet på                 | mad at                   |
| fortgjengeren                | the pedestrian           |
| å skjelle (-lte, -lt) ut     | to curse, scold          |
| grunnen                      | the reason               |
| frustrert                    | frustrated               |
| situasjonen                  | the situation            |
| økende                       | increasing               |
| biltrafikken                 | the (car) traffic        |
| kombinert med                | combined with            |
| synkende                     | decreasing               |
| trafikk-kapasiteten          | the traffic capacity     |
| å merke (-et, -et) seg       | to notice                |
| veireparasjonen              | the road repair          |
| å pågå (-gikk, -gått)        | to go on                 |
| hullet                       | the hole                 |
| krateret                     | the crater               |
| sperret                      | barred                   |
| enveiskjøringen              | the one-way traffic      |
| vant til                     | used to                  |
| å bryte (brøt, brutt) sammen | to come to a standstill  |
| å få (fikk, fått) noen til å | to make somebody do      |
| gjøre noe                    | something                |
| politikeren                  | the politician           |
| å ta (tok, tatt) seg sammen  | to pull oneself together |
| å unngå (-gikk, -gått)       | to prevent               |
| dum                          | stupid                   |
| årene som kommer             | the years to come        |
| optimistisk                  | optimistic               |
| på lang sikt                 | in the long term         |

## CONVERSATION

### I trafikken *In the traffic*

**Anthony McLeod** Å, Siri! I morges var jeg bare en hårsbredd fra å bli overkjørt av en bil!  
*Oh, Siri! This morning I was only a hair's breadth from being run over by a car!*

**Siri McLeod** Sa jeg ikke at du skulle passe deg for de gale bilførerne i Oslo? Og jeg vet hva jeg snakker om. Jeg er selv en av dem!  
*Didn't I tell you to look out for the crazy drivers in Oslo? And I know what I'm talking about. I'm one of them myself!*

**Anthony McLeod** Men jeg passet meg jo! Og jeg gikk akkurat over gaten på grønt da den idioten kom susende rundt hjørnet fra venstre!  
*But I did look out! And I was just crossing the street on green when that idiot came dashing round the corner from the left!*

**Siri McLeod** Husker du hva jeg fortalte deg om de smarte pingvinene i Antarktis og hvordan de unngår å bli drept av selene? Hvordan de alltid lar en annen pingvin hoppe i sjøen først og venter for å se om den blir tatt.  
*Remember what I told you about the smart penguins in the Antarctic and how they avoid being killed by the seals? How they always let another penguin jump into the sea first and wait to see if he is caught.*

**Anthony McLeod** Ikke vær tåpelig! Bare tanken på hva som kunne hendt, gjør meg fremdeles vettskremt!

*Don't be silly! The mere thought of what could have happened still makes me terrified!*

**Siri McLeod** Tilgi meg! Det må ha vært en sjokkerende opplevelse!  
*Forgive me! It must have been a shocking experience!*

**Anthony McLeod** Men hva er det som gjør de norske bilførerne så gale?  
*But what makes the Norwegian drivers so crazy?*

**Siri McLeod** Jeg vet ikke. Jeg er selv litt lik dem. Når jeg sitter bak rattet, er jeg alltid forbannet på fotgjengerne, men så snart jeg kommer ut på gaten igjen, oppdager jeg at jeg skjeller ut bilførerne.  
*I don't know. I'm a bit like them myself. Sitting behind the wheel I'm always mad at the pedestrians, but as soon as I get out onto the street again I find myself cursing the drivers.*

**Anthony McLeod** Men det må da være en grunn til det?  
*But there must be a reason for it?*

**Siri McLeod** Ja, jeg tror vi alle er frustrert over situasjonen, en økende biltrafikk kombinert med en synkende trafikk-kapasitet.  
*Well, I think we are all frustrated by the situation, increasing traffic combined with decreasing traffic capacity.*

**Anthony McLeod** Ja, jeg har alt merket meg alle veireparasjonene som pågår, alle hullene ...  
*Yes, I've already noticed all the road repairs going on, all the holes ...*

**Siri McLeod** Ikke hull, kratere!  
*Not holes, craters!*

→

**Anthony McLeod** Og likevel ser det alltid ut som om du finner ut hvilke gater som er sperret og hvilke som bare har enveiskjøring. Hvordan klarer du det?

*And yet you always seem to find out which roads are barred and which have only one-way traffic! How do you manage that?*

**Siri McLeod** Det er ikke så lett, men en blir jo vant til det, vet du.

*It isn't easy, but you get used to it, you know!*

**Anthony McLeod** Er dere ikke redd for at trafikken i denne byen en dag vil bryte fullstendig sammen?

*Aren't you afraid that some day the traffic in this city will come to a complete standstill?*

**Siri McLeod** Jo, det er vi alle sammen! Men kanskje det er nettopp det vi trenger for å få politikerne til å ta seg sammen og gjøre noe for å unngå det!

*Yes, we all are. But perhaps that's what we need to make the politicians pull themselves together and do something to prevent it!*

**Anthony McLeod** Hvordan kan de være så dumme?

*How can they be that stupid?*

**Siri McLeod** Det er de selvfølgelig ikke! De har alt gjort mye, og de kommer til å gjøre mer i årene som kommer. Jeg er optimistisk – men på lang sikt!

*Of course they aren't! They've already done a lot, and they'll do more in the years to come. I'm optimistic – but in the long term!*

## Chapter 11

This penultimate chapter includes:

- more expressions for talking about time
- the use of **for å** to mean 'in order to'
- further uses of the pronoun **det**
- how the English 'to be' may be translated by the verbs **ligge, sitte, stå** or **gå**

### 59 More expressions of time

You have already learnt many ways of talking about time (secs 20, 32 and 33). Here are some other useful time expressions:

for ... siden ago

for fjorten dager siden a fortnight ago

for tre dager siden three days ago

for en time siden an hour ago

om in, for (... yet)

om fjorten dager in a fortnight

om en ukes tid in a week's time

først om tre dager not for three days yet

i for

**Streiken har vart i tre uker.**

The strike has been going on for three weeks.

**Den vil sannsynligvis vare i to uker til.**

It will probably last for another two weeks.

på for

**Hun har ikke fått noe brev fra England på to måneder.**  
She hasn't had any letter from England for two months.

'Holde på (med)', 'være i ferd med' etc.

As you have seen, there is no continuous tense in Norwegian. However, there are other ways of indicating that an action lasts for some time:

**De holder på å gjøre lekser.**  
They are doing their homework.

**Han er i ferd med å bygge et nytt hus.**  
He is building a new house.

**Hun sitter og leser.**  
She is reading.

**Han står og henger.**  
He is hanging about.

å skulle til å to be about to, be on the point of

**Jeg skulle akkurat til å skrive til ham da han ringte meg.**  
I was just about to write to him when he phoned me.

**Han skulle til å oppgi alt håp da politiet kom til unnsetning.**  
He was on the point of giving up all hope when the police came to his rescue.

## 60 For å ('in order to')

'To', 'in order to', 'so as to' are expressed by **for å**:

**Han gikk i banken for å heve en reisesjekk.**  
He went to the bank to cash a traveller's cheque.

**Hun tok på seg brillene for å se bedre.**  
She put on her spectacles so as to see better.

But:

**De bad om en skje (til) å spise med.**  
They asked for a spoon to eat with.

**Hun gav meg penger (til) å kjøpe den for.**  
She gave me money to buy it with.

## Vocabulary

|                        |                     |
|------------------------|---------------------|
| å handle (-et, -et)    | to do some shopping |
| noe godt               | something nice      |
| å overraske (-et, -et) | to surprise         |

## Exercise 49

A Complete the sentences by translating the words in brackets:

- 1 Vi dro fra England (a week ago).
- 2 Vi hadde studert norsk (for three months).
- 3 Vi kommer til å bli i Norge (for two weeks).
- 4 Toget går (in two hours).
- 5 Vi reiser (not for half an hour).
- 6 Jeg har ikke røkt (for two years).

B Translate:

- 1 Han var i ferd med å pakke kofferten.
- 2 Han skulle til å forlate landet.
- 3 De satt og spiste middag.
- 4 Vi stod og ventet på bussen.

C Translate:

- 1 She went to town to do some shopping.
- 2 She wanted to buy something nice in order to surprise her family.
- 3 But she had no money to buy (it) with.



## 61 More about *det*

The demonstrative pronoun **det** (sec. 13) is commonly used in colloquial speech, and cannot always be translated by 'that'. Here are some examples of how **det** is rendered in English:

**Tror du det?** Do you think so?

**Jeg håper det.** I hope so.

**Har han det?** Has he?

**Nei, han har ikke det.** No, he hasn't.

**Kan dere det?** Can you?

**Ja, vi kan det.** Yes, we can.

**Er du trett? Det er jeg også.** Are you tired? So am I.

## Vocabulary

å bli syk  
sykehuset  
bra  
nå

to be taken ill  
the hospital  
all right  
by now

## Exercise 50

Translate:

- 1 Does Miss Holm live here?
- 2 No, she doesn't.
- 3 Has she been taken ill?
- 4 Yes, I'm afraid so.
- 5 Is she in hospital?
- 6 Yes, she is.
- 7 I hoped she would be all right by now.
- 8 So did we. But I think she is a little better.

## 62 *Det* as a preliminary subject

**Det** can be used as a preliminary subject with a real subject later in the sentence, as you have already seen in sec. 37, in the expressions **det er** and **det finnes** 'there is/are'. In Norwegian, however, this type of construction is also used with verbs of motion like **komme, gå, starte, kjøre** etc. and with **ligge, stå, sitte** (see sec. 63):

**Det kom en mann nedover veien.**

There was a man coming down the road.

**Det myldrer av mennesker på gaten.**

The street is swarming with people (lit. It is swarming with people in the street).

**Det startet en bil utenfor huset.**

A car started (lit. There was a car starting) outside the house.

**Det** is not only used at the beginning of the sentence:

**Den morgenen gikk det bare en buss.**

That morning there was only one bus passing.

## 63 The verbs *ligge, sitte, stå* and *gå*

The verbs **ligge, sitte, stå** and **gå** cannot always be translated by their English equivalents, as is shown in the following examples. Often English uses the verb 'to be'.

å ligge to lie

**Oslo ligger ved bunnen av Oslofjorden.**

Oslo is situated (*or* lies) at the head of the Oslofjord.

**Det ligger et supermarked på hjørnet.**

There is a supermarket on the corner.

**De ligger i sengen.**

They are in bed.

**Det ligger en kniv, en skje og en gaffel på bordet.**

There are a knife, a spoon and a fork on the table.

å stå to stand

Det står i avisen at ... It says in the newspaper that ...

Telefonnummeret står i (telefon)katalogen.

The telephone number is in the book.

Det står et glass og en flaske på bordet.

There are a glass and a bottle on the table.

Bilen står i garasjen.

The car is in the garage.

Han stod til eksamen.

He passed his exam.

å sitte to sit

Nøkkelen sitter i låsen. The key is in the lock.

Skipet sitter fast i isen. The ship is stuck in the ice.

Vil du sitte på? Would you like a lift?

Han satt og leste. He was reading.

å gå to go, walk

Tiden går. Time passes (or goes by).

Det gikk som ventet. It turned out as expected.

Det går ham godt. He is doing well.

Det går ikke. It doesn't work.

Hvordan gikk det på skolen i dag?

How did you get on at school today?

## Vocabulary

å ligge (lå, ligget)

sør for

siden

kjøkkenbenken

å stå (stod, stått)

trappeoppgangen

isen

å sitte (satt, sittet)

å sitte dårlig

to be situated, to lie

south of

the side

the kitchen unit

to stand

the stairway

the ice

to be sitting, to sit

to have a bad seat

## Exercise 51

Translate (using one of these verbs in every sentence: *ligge, stå, sitte, gå*):

- 1 There's a church on the other side of the marketplace.
- 2 There's a knife on the kitchen unit.
- 3 Tønsberg is situated south of Oslo.
- 4 There's a vase on the table.
- 5 There's a bicycle in the stairway.
- 6 What's in the newspaper today?
- 7 There's a woman waiting in the entrance hall.
- 8 He's having breakfast.
- 9 Did you have a bad seat?
- 10 Are you doing well?
- 11 How did it turn out?
- 12 The days passed so quickly.

## Vocabulary

restauranten

menyen

kelneren

forretten

suppen

onkelen

begge

hovedretten

å legge (la, lagt) på seg

desserten

saltvannsfisken

skalldyret

å behage (-et, -et)

the restaurant

the menu

the waiter

the starter

the soup

the uncle

both

the main dish

to put on weight

the dessert

the salt-water fish

the shellfish

to please

|                                 |                            |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------|
| gjør som du vil!                | do as you please!          |
| å foretrekke (-trakk, -trukket) | to prefer                  |
| kokt                            | boiled                     |
| torsken                         | the cod                    |
| stekt                           | fried                      |
| sjøtungen                       | the sole                   |
| å bestemme (-te, -t) seg        | to choose, make a decision |
| niesen                          | the niece                  |
| den unge damen                  | the young lady             |
| rødvinen                        | the red wine               |
| karamellpuddingen               | the creme caramel          |
| multekaken                      | the cloudberry cake        |
| regningen                       | the bill                   |
| et øyeblikk                     | one moment                 |
| De har rett med hensyn til      | you're right about         |

### Conversation

#### I en restaurant *In a restaurant*

- Anthony McLeod** Kan vi få menyen?  
*Can we have the menu, please?*
- Kelneren** Vær så god!  
*Here you are, sir.*
- Anthony McLeod** Takk skal De ha. La meg se. Hva vil du ha som forrett, Hanna? Eller ville du foretrekke en suppe?  
*Thank you very much. Let me see. What would you like for a starter, Hanna? Or would you prefer a soup?*
- Hanna McLeod** Ikke noen forrett og ikke noen suppe til meg, onkel Anthony. Jeg synes vi begge skulle gå rett på hovedretten. Etter en uke i Oslo har du alt begynt å legge på deg!

*No starter and no soup for me, uncle Anthony. I think we should both go straight on to the main dish. After one week in Oslo you're already putting on weight!*

- Anthony McLeod** Det har jeg ikke! Men jeg klarer meg meget godt uten forrett hvis jeg bare får en god dessert.

*I'm not! But I can very well do without a starter if only I get a good dessert.*

- Hanna McLeod** Da vil jeg gjerne prøve noe fra havet, saltvannsfisk eller skalldyr.

*Then I'd like to try something from the sea, some salt-water fish or shellfish.*

- Anthony McLeod** Gjør som du vil, men jeg skal ikke ha skalldyr. Jeg foretrekker kokt torsk.

*Do as you please, but no shellfish for me! I prefer the boiled cod.*

- Hanna McLeod** Og jeg stekt sjøtunge.

*And I the fried sole.*

- Anthony McLeod** Kelner!

*Waiter!*

- Kelneren** Har De bestemt Dem?

*You've chosen, sir?*

- Anthony McLeod** Ja, stekt sjøtunge til min niese og kokt torsk til meg.

*Yes, fried sole for my niece and boiled cod for me.*

- Kelneren** Javel, og hva vil dere ha å drikke?

*Very good, and what would you like to drink?*

- Anthony McLeod** Coca-cola til den unge damen og et glass rødvin til meg. Husets vin, takk!

*Coca-Cola for the young lady and a glass of red wine for me. The house wine, please.*

- Kelneren** Hva vil De ha til dessert?

*What would you like for dessert?*

→

|                       |   |
|-----------------------|---|
| <b>Hanna McLeod</b>   | <b>Karamellpudding til meg, takk.</b><br><i>Crème caramel for me, please.</i>   |
| <b>Anthony McLeod</b> | <b>Hvordan er multekaken Deres?</b><br><i>How's your cloudberry cake?</i>   |
| <b>Kelneren</b>       | <b>Det finnes ingen bedre!</b><br><i>It's second to none, sir.</i>  |
| <b>Anthony McLeod</b> | <b>Multekake til meg, og to kaffe. Og så regningen, takk.</b><br><i>Cloudberry cake for me, and two coffees. And then the bill, please.</i> |
| <b>Kelneren</b>       | <b>Et øyeblikk.</b><br><i>One moment, sir.</i>  |
| <b>Kelneren</b>       | <b>Hvordan smakte middagen?</b><br><i>How did you like your dinner?</i>   |
| <b>Hanna McLeod</b>   | <b>Det var meget godt alt sammen.</b><br><i>It was all very good.</i>   |
| <b>Anthony McLeod</b> | <b>Og De hadde rett med hensyn til multekaken.</b><br><i>And you were right about the cloudberry cake.</i>                                  |

## Chapter 12

The final chapter of your course covers:

- some expressions consisting of verb plus preposition
- the use of past participles as adjectives
- some characteristics of colloquial Norwegian speech
- phrases for greeting and congratulating people
- how to start and end a letter

### 64 More about prepositions

In secs 57 and 58 you learned about the use of **i**, **på** and **om**. Here are some verbs and expressions followed by **av**, **etter**, **for**, **med**, and **over**:

|                                 |                              |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------|
| <b>le av</b>                    | laugh at                     |
| <b>lide av</b>                  | suffer from                  |
| <b>være respektert av (for)</b> | be respected by (for)        |
| <b>være stolt av</b>            | be proud of                  |
| <b>lengte etter</b>             | long for                     |
| <b>stri (streve) med</b>        | work hard at                 |
| <b>interessere seg for</b>      | be interested in             |
| <b>klage over (or på)</b>       | complain about               |
| <b>være skuffet over</b>        | be disappointed with (or at) |
| <b>glede seg over</b>           | rejoice at                   |

In Norwegian verbs and expressions followed by prepositions are used with the infinitive, taking the place of the English '-ing' form:

**Hun gledet seg til å komme.** She looked forward to coming.  
**Han var redd for å dø.** He was afraid of dying.  
**De var trette av å gå.** They were tired of walking.

In some cases the Norwegian expression has a preposition where there is no preposition in English; for example, with parts of the body:

**Jeg har vondt i hodet.** I have a headache.  
**Er du kald på føttene?** Are your feet cold?  
**Vask deg i ansiktet!** Wash your face!  
**Tørk av deg på bena!** Wipe your feet!

## Vocabulary

|                          |                                  |
|--------------------------|----------------------------------|
| ros(en)                  | (the) praise                     |
| mer enn                  | more than                        |
| vakker                   | beautiful                        |
| etterkommeren            | the descendant                   |
| idretten                 | the sport                        |
| å være på høyde med      | to keep up with                  |
| hemningsløst             | without inhibition               |
| seieren                  | the victory                      |
| konkurransen             | the competition                  |
| umåtelig                 | immensely                        |
| nederlaget               | the defeat                       |
| (fotball-)dommeren       | the referee                      |
| å skylde (-dte, -dt) på  | to put the blame on              |
| å skade (-et, -et)       | to injure                        |
| spilleren                | the player                       |
| laget                    | the team                         |
| å tape (-te, -t)         | to lose                          |
| å lide (led, lidt) av    | to suffer from                   |
| landskampen i fotball    | the international football match |
| enorm                    | enormous                         |
| mindreverdighetsfølelsen | the inferiority complex          |
| å føle trang til         | to feel like                     |
| å ligne (-et, -et) på    | to resemble                      |
| i så henseende           | in that respect                  |

## Exercise 52

Translate:

- 1 Mange nordmenn er stolte av sitt land og lengter etter ros fra andre nasjoner.
- 2 De ønsker å bli respektert av andre for mer enn å ha et vakkert land og være etterkommere av de gamle vikingene.
- 3 De interesserer seg meget for idrett og strir hardt med å være på høyde med andre nasjoner.
- 4 De gleder seg hemningsløst over enhver seier i internasjonale konkurranser og er umåtelig skuffet over ethvert nederlag.
- 5 De klager på dommeren eller skylder på skadede spillere når laget deres taper en landskamp i fotball.
- 6 Noen mennesker tenker at nordmennene må lide av en enorm mindreverdighetsfølelse.
- 7 Andre føler trang til å le av det hele og mener at nordmennene ligner på alle andre mennesker i så henseende.

## 65 The past participle used as an adjective

The past participle can be used as an adjective, as shown in the following:

et malt gjerde a painted fence  
 en dressert hund a trained dog  
 en ventet virkning an expected effect  
 et forsikret hus an insured house  
 en stjålet veske a stolen handbag  
 et brukket ben a broken leg

In the definite form and in the plural an **-e** is added to the participle, as to other adjectives:

det malte gjerdet, malte gjerder, de malte gjerdene  
den dresserte hunden, dresserte hunder, de dresserte hundene

If, however, the participle ends in **-et**, the **t** is usually changed into a **d**:

den ventede virkning(en), ventede virkninger, de ventede virkningene  
det forsikrede huset, forsikrede hus, de forsikrede husene

Participles of strong verbs often have their ending changed into **-ne**:

den stjalne vesken, stjalne vesker, de stjalne veskene  
det brukne benet, brukne ben, de brukne bena

## Vocabulary

|                              |                  |
|------------------------------|------------------|
| å koke (-te, -t)             | to boil          |
| å ribbe (-et, -et)           | to pluck         |
| å flå (-dde, -dd)            | to skin          |
| bjørnen                      | the bear         |
| å frigjøre (-gjorde, -gjort) | to liberate      |
| å stryke (strøk, strøket)    | to iron          |
| lommetørkleet                | the handkerchief |

## Exercise 53

A Complete the following, translating the English participle in brackets:

- 1 et (boiled) egg
- 1 en (plucked) kylling
- 3 en (skinned) bjørn
- 4 et (liberated) land
- 5 et (ironed) lommetørkle
- 6 en (frozen) finger

B Give the definite form singular and the indefinite and definite form of the above examples 1, 2 and 6 (Model: *et malt gjerde – det malte gjerdet – malte gjerder – de malte gjerdene*)

## 66 Colloquial speech

Colloquial Norwegian can only be learned through listening and practice. But some knowledge of the tags and small words used in everyday speech could be helpful. The Norwegians, like the English, make frequent use of filler words, to make their speech sound friendly and informal or to modify the meaning of the sentences.

1 Tags are often added to questions and statements (see sec. 61 for the use of **det** here):

**Han er i Norge, er han ikke det?**  
He's in Norway, isn't he?

**Han er ikke hjemme, er han det?**  
He's not at home, is he?

**Du studerer norsk, gjør du ikke det?**  
You study Norwegian, don't you?

**Du synes ikke det er for vanskelig, gjør du det?**  
You don't find it too difficult, do you?

**Det er ganske spennende, ikke sant?**  
It's quite exciting, isn't it?

**Det er litt tidlig, vet du.**  
It's a bit early, you know.

**Møtet er utsatt, tror jeg.**  
The meeting has been postponed, I believe.

**Hun kunne ikke komme, forstår du.**

She couldn't come, you see.

2 Adverbs are used, frequently without adding any specific meaning: **forresten, jo, liksom, nok, så, vel, da**

**Hvordan har de det, forresten?**

By the way, how are they?

**Vi er jo venner.**

After all, we are friends.

**Jeg føler meg liksom (så) svimmel.**

I feel kind of dizzy.

**Det kommer nok av varmen.**

That's probably due to the heat.

**Så morsomt at du kunne komme!**

I'm so glad (that) you could come!

**Han har vel forsovet seg.**

He must have overslept, I suppose.

**Ja da! Certainly!**

**Adjø da! Bye-bye!**

**Kom nå da! Oh, come on!**

**Enn jeg da? What about me?**

**Vær så god da! Please help yourself!**

**Fy da! For shame!**

3 **Ja, jo** and **nei** are used as opening words, not only as answers to questions:

**Ja, det var en sørgelig historie!**

That was (indeed) a sad affair!

**Jo, det var en snurrig fyr!**

He was (certainly) a funny chap!

**Nei, har du hørt på maken!**

The idea of it!

And in the double version:

**Jaja, så får vi gjøre det selv da.**

OK, then we'll have to do it ourselves.

**Nei nei, hvis du ikke vil så.**

Oh well, if you don't want to do it.

**Nei** is also used in exclamations:

**Nei, så snilt av deg!** How kind of you!

**Nei, vet De hva!** This is too bad! *or* Oh really!

4 The personal pronoun is used in addressing people:

**Morn, du!** Hello! (Hi!)

**Bare kom inn, du!** Please come in (won't you!)

**Sier du det, du?** So that's what you say?

**Det var moro, det!** That was fun (that was)!

**Vi klarte det, vi!** We made it!

**Du er dum, du!** You're a fool (you are)!

## 67 Greetings and congratulations

*Greetings:*

Various greetings are used when meeting people, from the more formal greetings like:

**God dag!** Good day!

**God morgen!** Good morning!

**God aften (kveld)!** Good evening!

to the informal and familiar ones such as:

**Morn! Hello!**

**Hei! Hi!**

When we are introduced to people we haven't met before, we often say:

**Hyggelig å hilse på Dem!**

How do you do? (or Pleased to meet you!)

When we welcome guests to our house we say:

**Velkommen! Glad you could come!**



### Thanks and congratulations

The guests say to the hostess or the host after a party:

**Takk for meg!** Thank you for having me!

or (on more formal occasions) after a meal:

**Takk for maten!** Thank you for the meal!

And the next time you meet somebody whose house you have been to you say:

**Takk for sist!** Thank you for the last time!

If you want to congratulate somebody on a special occasion you should say:

**Gratulerer!** or **Til lykke!** Congratulations!

### Leave-taking

When parting we usually say:

|                         |            |                      |
|-------------------------|------------|----------------------|
| <b>Adjø!</b>            | } (formal) | Goodbye!             |
| <b>Farvel!</b>          |            |                      |
| <b>Morn da (morna)!</b> | (informal) | Bye-bye!             |
| <b>Ha det bra!</b>      | } (formal) | Have a good time!    |
| <b>Ha det!</b>          |            |                      |
| <b>På gjensyn!</b>      |            | So long!             |
| <b>Vi sees!</b>         |            | See you later!       |
| <b>God helg!</b>        |            | Have a good weekend! |

### Wishes

To somebody who is ill:

**God bedring!** I hope you'll soon be better!

Some other wishes are:

**God fornøyelse!** Have a good time!

**Lykke til!** Good luck!

**Hils din bror fra meg!** Give my love to your brother!

Some common greetings in letters are:

|                           |            |                                     |
|---------------------------|------------|-------------------------------------|
| <b>Kjære herr X/fru X</b> | (formal)   | { Dear Sir/Madam<br>Dear Mr X/Mrs X |
| <b>Kjære Susan/John</b>   | (informal) |                                     |

And some common closes are:

|                           |            |                            |
|---------------------------|------------|----------------------------|
| <b>med hilsen fra</b>     | (formal)   | With compliments from      |
| <b>ærbødigst</b>          | (formal)   | Yours faithfully/sincerely |
| <b>men vennlig hilsen</b> | (informal) | With kind regards          |
| <b>kjærlig hilsen fra</b> | (informal) | Love from                  |
| <b>Hils ham fra meg.</b>  |            | Remember me to him.        |

### Please

The English 'please' can be translated by **Vær så snill** (in polite requests) or by **Vær så god** (expressing permission or consent: 'please do').

In sentences introduced by these expressions we can use either **og** or **å**:

**Vær så snill og send meg sukkeret.** Or: **Vær så snill å sende meg sukkeret.**

Please pass me the sugar!

**Vær så god og forsyn deg!** Or: **Vær så god å forsyne deg!**

Please help yourself!

## Vocabulary

|                                     |                                 |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| <b>å være fornøyd med oppholdet</b> | to be happy with the stay       |
| <b>ikke ... før</b>                 | not ... till                    |
| <b>å berolige (-et, -et)</b>        | to calm down                    |
| <b>tidlig på året</b>               | early in the year               |
| <b>lykke, hell</b>                  | luck                            |
| <b>trist</b>                        | sad                             |
| <b>å gjøre noe med noe</b>          | to do something about something |
| <b>som du vil</b>                   | as you like                     |
| <b>å la (lot, latt) en få vite</b>  | to let someone know             |
| <b>å passe (-et, -et)</b>           | to suit                         |

## Exercise 54

A Add tags to the following questions:

- 1 Dere har hatt en hyggelig ferie ...?
- 2 Du er fornøyd med oppholdet i Norge ...?
- 3 Dere skal ikke reise før i morgen ...?
- 4 Dere har ikke glemte noe ...?
- 5 Dere kommer igjen neste år ...?

B Translate:

- 1 We'll come by the end of July, I believe.
- 2 You ought to come in September, you see.
- 3 It's the best time for fishing, you know.

C Translate, using *forresten, jo, liksom, nok* etc.:

- 1 After all, you like fishing.
- 2 Yes, it kind of calms me down.
- 3 By the way, did you get any fish this year?
- 4 No, but it was a bit early in the year, I suppose.
- 5 You'll probably have better luck next year.

D Translate, using *Ja* (or *Jaja*), *Nei* (*Neinei*) as opening words, *da* or personal pronoun (*du, jeg, hun, han, etc.*) at the end of the sentence:

- 1 That was the end of the holiday.
- 2 How sad!

3 Oh well, there is nothing to be done (lit. to do) about that.

4 Give my love to your sister!

5 Certainly!

6 Bye-bye!

7 Have a good time!

8 Do as you like!

9 He is very strong indeed!

10 He isn't strong, but I am (strong).

E Translate:

1 Please shut the window!

2 Please let me know if the time suits you.

3 Please sit down!

4 Please tell me about it!

## Vocabulary

|                        |                        |
|------------------------|------------------------|
| igjen                  | again                  |
| overraskelsen          | the surprise           |
| spent                  | curious                |
| å tro (-dde, -dd)      | to think, believe      |
| kjedelig               | boring                 |
| i begynnelsen          | at the beginning       |
| havnen                 | the port               |
| å ta feil              | to be wrong            |
| å innse (-så, -sett)   | to realise             |
| reisen                 | the voyage             |
| gir det beste utbyttet | is the most worthwhile |
| skipsdekket            | the deck of the ship   |
| å slappe (-et, -et) av | to relax               |
| praktfull              | magnificent            |

|                             |                     |
|-----------------------------|---------------------|
| kystlandskapet              | the coastal scenery |
| fossen                      | the waterfall       |
| å glemme (-mte, -mt)        | to forget           |
| å heve (-et, -et) seg       | to tower            |
| klippen                     | the rock            |
| på begge sider              | on either side      |
| å dekke (-et, -et)          | to cover            |
| fjellveggen                 | the mountain wall   |
| sløret                      | the veil            |
| sølvbåndet                  | the silvery ribbon  |
| sansen for poesi            | the sense of poetry |
| å innrømme (-et, -et)       | to admit            |
| å dukke (-et, -et) opp      | to appear           |
| midt blandt                 | amid                |
| å klynge (-et, -et) seg til | to cling to         |
| lappen, flekken             | the patch           |
| vegetasjonen                | the vegetation      |
| klyngen                     | the cluster         |
| trehuset                    | the wooden house    |
| lys                         | bright              |
| fiskerbåten                 | the fishing boat    |
| midnattssolen               | the midnight sun    |
| vanlig                      | ordinary            |
| sannheten                   | the truth           |
| sant å si                   | to tell the truth   |
| følelsen                    | the feeling         |
| Nordkapp                    | North Cape          |
| bortenfor                   | beyond              |
| å være fornøyd med          | to be happy with    |
| å organisere (-te, -t)      | to organise         |
| å delta (-tok, -tatt)       | to take part        |
| inne i landet               | inland              |
| reinsdyret                  | the reindeer        |
| samen                       | the Lapp            |
| toppen                      | the summit          |
| et par                      | a couple of         |
| enda en gang                | once again          |
| vennligheten                | the kindness        |
| noensinne                   | ever                |
| å nøle (-te, -t)            | to hesitate         |

## CONVERSATION

### Nytt møte i Oslo *Meeting again in Oslo*

- Janice McLeod** God dag, herr Holm. Så hyggelig å se Dem igjen!  
*Good morning, Mr Holm. How nice to see you again!*
- Herr Holm** God dag. For en hyggelig overraskelse! Nå er jeg spent på å høre om Deres reise med Hurtigruten!  
*Good morning! What a nice surprise! Now I am curious to hear about your journey with the Coastal Express!*
- Janice McLeod** Vi har alltid trodd at en sjøreise ville være kjedelig, og i begynnelsen lurte vi på hva vi ville kunne se og gjøre mellom havnene.  
*We had always thought a cruise would be boring, and at the beginning we wondered what there would be to see or do between the ports.*
- Anthony McLeod** Men vi tok feil! Vi skjønnte snart at i Norge er det selve reisen mer enn stoppestedene som gir det beste utbyttet.  
*But we were wrong! We soon realised that in Norway it's the voyage, more than the stops, that is the most worthwhile.*
- Janice McLeod** Mens vi satt der på skipsdekket, lærte vi å slappe av og ta inn i oss det praktfulle kystlandskapet.  
*Sitting on the deck of the ship, we learned to relax and take in the magnificent coastal scenery.*

→

- Herr Holm** Så dere fossen Syv Søstre i Geiranger?  
*Did you see the Seven Sisters' waterfall at Geiranger?*
- Janice McLeod** Å ja, jeg skal aldri glemme Geirangerfjorden med klippene og fjellene som hever seg på begge sider, og de Syv Søstre som dekker fjellveggen lik et slør av sølvbånd!  
*Oh yes, I shall never forget the Geiranger fjord with its towering rocks and mountains on either side, and the Seven Sisters covering the mountain wall like a veil of silvery ribbons!*
- Anthony McLeod** Ja, De forstår, min kone har alltid hatt sans for poesi! Men jeg må innrømme at jeg selv ble ganske fascinert av bondegårdene som plutselig dukket opp midt blant klippene, der de klynget seg til lapper av vegetasjon ...  
*You see, my wife has always had a sense of poetry! But I must admit that I was quite fascinated myself by the farmhouses that suddenly appeared amid the rocks clinging to patches of vegetation ...*
- Janice McLeod** ... Og de små klyngene av trehus i lyse farger med en fiskebåt foran.  
*... and the small clusters of brightly coloured wooden houses with a fishing boat in front.*
- Herr Holm** Og hva med midnattssolen?  
*And what about the midnight sun?*
- Anthony McLeod** Som en amerikansk venn sa, den lignet svært mye på den vanlige solen! Sant å si var min sterkeste følelse da jeg stod på Nordkapp, at jeg befant meg på toppen av Europa og visste at det ikke var noe bortenfor.  
*As an American friend said, it looked very much like the ordinary sun! To tell the truth,*

- my strongest feeling, standing on North Cape, was that of being on the top of Europe knowing that there was nothing beyond.*
- Herr Holm** Så dere er altså fornøyd med reisen begge to?  
*So you're both happy with your trip?*
- Janice McLeod** Ja, det hele var godt arrangert, og vi deltok selvsagt i noen av utfluktene inne i landet. Vi drog med reinsdyr for å besøke samene og på tur til toppen av Tromsøya, bare for å nevne et par av de tingene vi likte best.  
*Yes, it was all very well organised and, of course, we took part in some of the inland tours. We went by reindeer to see the Lapps and on a trip to the summit of Tromsøya, just to mention a couple of the things that we enjoyed the most.*
- Herr Holm** Unnskyld meg, jeg er lei for å måtte forlate dere, men jeg er allerede sent ute. Adjø, og ha en god hjemreise!  
*Excuse me, I'm sorry to leave you, but I'm already late. Goodbye, and have a pleasant trip home!*
- Janice McLeod** Adjø, herr Holm. Takk enda en gang for Deres venn lighet. Og hvis De noen gang kommer til London, så nøl ikke med å besøke oss!  
*Goodbye, Mr Holm. Thank you once again for your kindness. And if you ever come to London, don't hesitate to come and see us!*

## Key to exercises

### CHAPTER 1

**Exercise 1A:** 1 en koffert 2 en lommebok 3 et pass 4 en gate 5 et bilde 6 en stasjon 7 en rute 8 et tog 9 en buss 10 et fly **B:** 1 kofferten 2 lommeboken 3 passet 4 gaten 5 bildet 6 stasjonen 7 ruten 8 toget 9 bussen 10 flyet

**Exercise 2:** 1 stoler 2 senger 3 bord 4 hus 5 vinduer 6 skoler 7 tepper 8 bøker 9 hender 10 mødre 11 trær 12 menn 13 byer 14 trapper 15 fjell

**Exercise 3:** 1 en stol – stolen – stoler – stolene 2 en seng – sengen – senger – sengene 3 et bord – bordet – bord – bordene 4 et hus – huset – hus – husene 5 et vindu – vinduet – vinduer – vinduene 6 et teppe – teppet – tepper – teppene 7 en skole – skolen – skoler – skolene 8 en hånd – hånden – hender – hendene 9 en mor – moren – mødre – mødrene 10 et tre – treet – trær – trærne 11 en vei – veien – veier – veiene 12 en bil – bilen – biler – bilene 13 en lampe – lampen – lamper – lampene 14 et gulv – gulvet – gulv – gulvene 15 et tak – taket – tak – takene

**Exercise 4:** 1 Hva heter du (De)? Jeg heter Anthony McLeod. 2 Er du (De) amerikansk? 4 Nei, jeg er engelsk. 5 Har du (De) venner i Norge? 6 Ja, det har jeg. 7 Hvor er din (Deres) kone? 8 Hun er i butikken. 9 Har du (dere) barn? 10 Ja, vi har to barn. 11 Er de også i Norge? 12 Ja, det er de. 13 Hvor gamle er de? 14 De er tolv og fjorten år gamle.

### CHAPTER 2

**Exercise 5:** 1 mannens avis 2 søsterens venn 3 barnets foreldre 4 kundenes vesker 5 byens navn 6 togets fart 7 blomstenes farger 8 husets hjørne

**Exercise 6:** 1 en stort lastebil, et stor pakkhus, store varemagasiner 2 Blusen er gul, slipset er rødt, skoene er sorte.

3 Den er lys, det er langt, de er spisse. 4 Han har lyst hår, blå øyne, en liten hake, et lite arr i pannen og små fregner på nesen. 5 et merkelig svar, et hyggelig møte, et lett spørsmål 6 Livet er kort, dagen er kort, timene er korte. 7 et nytte møte, et fritt valg, et plutselig stopp

**Exercise 7:** 1 den brune genseren 2 det lange undertøyet 3 de varme klærne 4 den nye lastebilen 5 det store varemagasinet 6 det farlige veikrysset 7 den lille bondegården 8 det lille føllet

**Exercise 8:** 1 I Norge er det nødvendig å bruke varme klær om vinteren. 2 Alle må lære å lese og (å) skrive. 3 Vi ønsker å reise til Italia i sommer. 4 Du (Dere) arbeider meget hardt. 5 De ser på fjernsyn. 6 Hun kjøper (seg) en ny kjole. 7 Han bor i Oslo. Hver morgen reiser han til kontoret med buss. 8 Om aftenen foretrekker han å bli hjemme.

**Exercise 9A:** 1 Er det kaldt i Norge om vinteren? 2 Trenger vi varmt undertøy og en tykk genser? 3 Ønsker du (De, dere) å bli i Oslo? 4 Liker du (De, dere) å gå på ski? 5 Kommer Deres (dine) barn sammen med Dem (Dere, deg)? 6 Har de (fått) venner her? 7 Hører du (De, dere) meg ikke? **B:** 1 Ja, det er kaldt i Norge om vinteren. 2 Ja, dere trenger varmt undertøy og en tykk genser. 3 Ja, jeg (vi) ønsker å bli i Oslo. 4 Ja, jeg (vi) liker å gå på ski. 5 Ja, våre (mine) barn kommer sammen med oss (meg). 6 Nei, de har ikke fått venner her. 7 Nei, jeg (vi) hører deg ikke.

### CHAPTER 3

**Exercise 10A:** 1 Arbeid hardere! 2 Les boken! 3 Lær leksen (leksjonen)! 4 Skriv øvelsen! 5 Spis aftensmaten (din aftensmat)! 6 Kom tilbake! 7 Stopp toget! 8 Ta bussen! 9 Stå stille! 10 Se på himmelen! **B:** 6 Kom ikke tilbake! 7 Stopp ikke toget! 8 Ta ikke bussen! 9 Stå ikke stille! 10 Se ikke på himmelen! (or: Ikke kom ..., Ikke stopp ... etc.)

**Exercise 11:** 1 Hvor bor De (du)? 2 Når reiser dere? Hvordan har De (du) det? 4 Hvem er det? 5 Hvem ser hun etter? 6 Hvilket eple foretrekker du? 7 Hva er det? 8 Hvor mange språk snakker De (du)? 9 Hvilke språk snakker De (du)? 10 Hvor mye kommer det på?

**Exercise 12:** 1 Han går aldri på kino. 2 De har ingen (ikke noen) gjester. 3 Vi har ikke noe (intet) landsted. 4 Jeg ønsker ingenting (ikke noe). 5 Du (Dere) har ikke mer brød. 6 Det er ikke kaldt lenger.

**Exercise 13:** 1 den hyggelige aftenen 2 denne varme sommeren 3 de uforglemmelige dagene 4 det farlige veikrysset 5 disse blå fjellene 6 dette moderne skipet 7 – Kjøp ikke (Ikke kjøp) den boken! – Hvilken bok mener De (du)? – Jeg mener den (der). Denne (her) er mye (meget) bedre. 8 Jeg vil ha to brød, dette (her) og det der. Og tre kaker, to av disse (her) og en av de der.

**Exercise 14:** (a) to + ni = elleve (to og ni er elleve) (b) fem + syv (sju) = tolv (c) femten – ni = seks (femten minus ni er seks) (d) toogtyve (tjueto) + fireogførti (førtifire) = seksogseksti (seksstiseks) (e) treogtyve (tjuetre) – ti = tretten (f) seksogfemti (femtiseks) – toogtredve (trettito) = fireogtyve (tjuefire) (g) treogtredve (trettitre) x (ganger) tre = niog-nitti (nittini) (h) hundre : (dividert med) femogtyve (tjuefem) = fire (i) femten x fem = femogsytti (syttifem) (j) åtteogseksti : fire = sytten (k) seks x åtte = åtteogførti (førtiåtte) (l) åtteog-nitti (nittiåtte) : fjorten = syv (sju).

#### CHAPTER 4

**Exercise 15:** 1 Hvor er min blå skjorte, mitt røde slips, mine brune sokker? 2 Dette er din lommebok, ditt pass og dine billetter. 3 Vårt fly (Flyet vårt) er forsinket. 4 De må levere sine koffertene (koffertene sine). 5 Deres bagasje (Bagasjen deres) er i flyet. 6 Hans forretningsforbindelser venter (på) ham. 7 Hun besøker sin kjæreste (kjæresten sin). 8 Flyet og dets mannskap. 9 Vask hendene! 10 Han har (en) hatt på hodet.

**Exercise 16:** 1 Det setet (der) er hennes, dette (her) er ditt. 2 Disse avisene (her) er våre, de (der) er deres. 3 Ingenting (Ikke noe) i dette huset er hans, alt er mitt. 4 Vi har våre feil, og dere har deres.

**Exercise 17:** 1 enkle klær 2 våkne øyne 3 magre lammekoteletter 4 et norsk flagg, norske flagg 5 et fremmed land, fremmede land 6 et felles anliggende, felles anliggender 7 et moderne hus, moderne hus

**Exercise 18:** 1 Kari er yngre enn Marit. Men Berit er den yngste piken i klassen. 2 Norge er større enn Danmark. Men Sverige er det største av de tre skandinaviske landene. 3 Skagastølstind er høyere enn Snøhetta. Men Galdhøpiggen er den høyeste fjelltoppen i Norge. 4 Trondheimsfjorden er lengre enn Oslofjorden. Men Sognefjorden er den lengste av dem alle. 5 Denne boken er mer underholdende enn den. Men den der er den mest underholdende bok jeg har i mitt bibliotek.

**Exercise 19:** 1 Gi henne et armbånd! 2 Glem ikke å takke ham for det. 3 Vær så snill å skrive (og skriv) til meg om det. 4 Hennes mor venter på henne på stasjonen. 5 Vær så snill å sende (og send) oss varene så snart det passer for Dem (deg). 6 Jeg besøker dem én gang i uken.

**Exercise 20:** (a) kvart (et kvarter) over to, halv tre, kvart på tre, tre (b) fem over tre, ti på halv fire, ti over halv fire, fem på fire (c) ett minutt over fire, tolv over fire, fire på halv fem, syv (sju) over halv fem.

#### CHAPTER 15

**Exercise 21:** 1 Noen gutter kastet steiner på hverandre. 2 Vi beskyttet våre venner. 3 Han skadet hodet (sitt). 4 De trodde det ikke. 5 Hun hentet treningsdressen (sin). 6 Hver morgen jogget hun i parken. 7 Hva spiste du til frokost? 8 Jeg kokte noen egg og stekte noen poteter. 9 Vi hørte en lyd, men ingenting (ikke noe) hendte. 10 Vinden blåste kraftig og det snødde. 11 Vi lukket dørene. 12 Barna lekte på gulvet. De brydde seg ikke om stormen.

**Exercise 22:** 1 Hun skrev et brev til formannen. 2 De fant (den) mannen de så etter. 3 Han gikk nedover gaten. 4 Denne herren hjalp meg. 5 Han tok mine koffertene (koffertene mine) og bar dem til stasjonen. 6 Bilen kom mot ham i meget stor fart. 7 Gutten ble redd og løp av sted. 8 Foreldrene (Hans foreldre) grep ham og holdt ham tilbake. 9 De gav ham en iskrem for å roe ham ned. 10 Han satte seg (ned) og sa ingenting.



**Exercise 23A:** 1 langsom – langsomt 2 rask – raskt (fort – fort) 3 klart – klart (tydelig – tydelig) 4 vennlig – vennlig 5 riktig – riktig 6 dårlig – dårlig 7 tung – tungt (kraftig – kraftig) 8 forferdelig – forferdelig **B:** 1 vanligvis, naturligvis, oppover, nedover, nedenfor, ovenfor 2 meget, for mye (for meget), nå, ennå, likevel, sjelden, knapt (neppe), nettopp (bare), forskjellig, særlig, kanskje **C:** 1 Vi ønsket sterkt å dra på fjelltur. 2 Det begynte plutselig å regne. Vi hadde ikke noen regnfrakk, så vi ble snart gjennomvåte. 3 Men litt etter litt kom vi nærmere fjellene. 4 Til slutt kom vi frem til vårt bestemmelsessted. 5 Vi trengte virkelig noen tørre klær!

**Exercise 24:** (a) (den) første, annen (andre), tredje, fjerde, femte, sjette, syvende (sjuende), åttende, niende, tiende (b) ellevte, tolvte, trettende, tyvende (tjuende), enogtyvende (tjueførste), toogtredevte (trettiandre), femogfortiende (førtifemte), treogfemtiende (femtiredje), seksogsekstiende (sekstisjette), åtteogsyttiende (syttiåttende), syvogåttiende (åttisjuende), niognittiende (nittiniende) (c) en halv, tre fjerdedeler, fem åttendedeler, syv (sju) tolvtedeler, åtte femtedeler

#### CHAPTER 6

**Exercise 25:** 1 Har du snakket med din venn? 2 Nei, jeg har ikke sett ham på lang tid, men jeg har skrevet et brev til ham. 3 Dine (Deres) kolleger har ventet på deg (Dem). 4 Jeg har (er) kommet for sent til toget. 5 Hun har hatt en travel dag. 6 Babyen har skreket hele natten. 7 Hun har følt seg (Hun har vært) deprimert. 8 De har gått en tur. 9 Vi har tilbrakt (hatt) en god tid sammen. 10 Vi har bodd i Oslo hele livet. 11 Har du (De) sett hans siste film? 12 Nei, jeg har ikke vært på kino på mange år.

**Exercise 26:** 1 Hvor skal vi gå i aften? 2 Jeg vil gå på kino. 3 Vi bør bestille billetter på forhånd. 4 Ja, jeg vet det. Når må vi hente billettene? 5 Når vil du at jeg skal komme? 6 Kan du komme litt tidligere? 7 Jeg skal (vil) være der (klokken) seks. 8 Vi må ikke være for sene.

**Exercise 27:** 1 I natt ble hun verre. 2 Men om morgenen følte hun seg (var hun) meget bedre. 3 Senere på dagen var hun helt frisk igjen. 4 Neste dag stod hun tidligst opp og arbeidet

hardest av oss alle. 5 Vil du forstå bedre hva folk sier og bli lettere forstått? 6 Da må du lytte mer oppmerksomt og snakke mer tydelig (tydeligere).

**Exercise 28:** 1 Per gikk ned på gaten. 2 Nede på gaten traff han en venn. 3 De kjørte bort i en bil. 4 De ble borte i tre timer. 5 Hjemme ventet foreldrene på ham. 6 De bad meg hjem. 7 Du skulle ikke gådituten å si fra til oss. 8 Her i huset må alle følge husordenen.

**Exercise 29:** 1 Hvilken årstid foretrekker du? 2 Jeg liker alle årstider. 3 Om vinteren går vi på ski og skøyter, og noen ganger aker vi. 4 I vår tilbrakte vi påskeferien i en fjellhytte i Hallingdal. 5 Vi bodde der fra Skjærtorsdag til Annen påskedag. 6 (På) den syttende mai feiret vi den norske nasjonaldagen. 7 I sommer drog vi på fisketur til (i) et fiskevann i Gudbrandsdalen. 8 Sist høst gikk vi (tur) i fjellene. 9 Til sommeren skal vi dra på seiltur i Oslofjorden. 10 Hvilken dato er det i dag? 11 Det er den 6. januar, 28. februar, 11. mars, 21. april, 4. juli, 2. september, 25. oktober, 3. november, 27. desember. 12 Det er Nyttårsdag, Langfredag, Kristi Himmelfartsdag, Første juledag, Annen pinsedag.

#### CHAPTER 7

**Exercise 30:** 1 Min venn hadde vært alvorlig syk. 2 Han hadde forlatt landet. 3 Nå var han blitt bedre, og han var kommet hjem. 4 Vi hadde bedt ham til middag. 5 Jeg hadde ikke sett ham siden i fjor jul. 6 Han hadde ikke forandret seg. 7 Vi snakket som om ingenting hadde hendt.

**Exercise 31:** 1 Det er en statue foran Slottet. 2 Det er en postkasse på hjørnet. 3 Det er et supermarked ved siden av stasjonen. 4 Det er mange blomster på torget. 5 Jeg hadde vært i Norge siden jul. 6 Jeg hadde vært der fra januar til april. 7 Jeg hadde vendt (reist) tilbake til London før påske. 8 Kan du lese uten (dine) briller? 9 Bare med stor vanskelighet. 10 Jeg ville gjerne ha noe for min reisesyke. 11 Ikke spis mellom måltidene! 12 Det nye teateret ligger bak universitetet.

**Exercise 32:** 1 Snakker noen her engelsk? 2 Har De noen gode appelsiner? 3 De er alle gode, men noen av dem er bedre enn de andre. 4 Noe er bedre enn ingenting. 5 Du kan



ikke ha alt. 6 Han hadde telt hver time, hvert minutt. 7 Hun spurte hver av dem. 8 Man sier at han har vært meget rik.

**Exercise 33:** (a) (ett) hundre og femti + (ett) hundre = to hundre og femti (b) to hundre og seksti + (ett) hundre og førti = fire hundre (c) tre hundre og ti + fem hundre og femogsytti (syttifem) = åtte hundre og femogåtti (åttifem) (d) syv hundre og åtteogførti (sju hundre og førtiåtte) x tolv = åtte tusen ni hundre og seksogsytti (syttiseks) (e) fire hundre og femti x (ett) hundre og femogtyve (tjuefem) = seksogfemti (femtiseks) tusen to hundre og femti (f) tre tusen fem hundre og sytti x seks tusen åtte hundre og tredve (tretti) = fireogtyve (tjuefire) millioner tre hundre og treogåtti (åttitre) tusen ett hundre

**Exercise 34:** 1 Det er pent vær (Det er varmt). 2 Det er dårlig vær. 3 Det regner. 4 Det sner (snør). 5 Det blåser. 6 Det er tåket. 7 Det er kaldt. 8 Det tiner (tør).

#### CHAPTER 8

**Exercise 35:** 1 Først skal (vil) jeg avslutte mitt arbeid. 2 Etterpå skal vi spise middag. 3 Middagen er (vil være) ferdig om en halv time. 4 Jeg skal reise om (noen) få minutter. 5 Jeg skal gjøre noen innkjøp. 6 I morgen skal vi reise med fly til Stavanger. 7 Derfra skal vi reise med hydrofoil til Bergen. Det blir (vil bli) morsomt! 9 Vi er ikke (vil ikke være) tilbake før (på) søndag.

**Exercise 36A:** Jeg setter meg, du setter deg, han (hun) setter seg, vi setter oss, dere setter dere, de setter seg. **B:** 1 Når legger du deg? (Når legger dere dere?) 2 Vanligvis legger vi oss (klokken) halv tolv. 3 De små barna legger seg (klokken) halv åtte. 4 Om morgenen vil(le) vi alle gjerne hvile litt lenger. 5 Men vi må komme oss på arbeidet tidsnok. 6 Vi vasker oss og kler på oss i en fart. 7 Bare på søndager kan vi hygge oss ved frokostbordet. 8 Vi trenger ikke å slanke oss for å kvitte oss med overflødige kilo.

**Exercise 37:** 1 I morges hørte jeg en lyd som vekket meg. 2 Fra mitt vindu så jeg en gutt som jeg kjente meget godt. 3 Det var avisgutten som brakte morgenavisen. 4 Jeg tok avisen som lå innenfor entrédøren. 5 Avisen som jeg leste

brakte en reportasje om et bankrøveri. 6 Da kom min kone, som vanligvis stod opp først, for å spise frokost sammen med meg. 7 Hun satte seg ved frokostbordet, og jeg fortalte henne hva jeg hadde lest i avisen. 8 Banken hvis penger var stjålet, lå like ved siden av stasjonen.

**Exercise 38:** 1 Langrenn er like (likså) spennende som slalåm og utfor(renn). 2 Fjellturer er like (likså) populære som sjøreiser langs kysten. 3 Dette rommet (værelset) er ikke så komfortabelt som det andre. 4 Du kan bli så lenge du vil. 5 Kredittkort blir ikke så lett godtatt i Norge som i USA og Canada. 6 En eldre dame er ikke så gammel som en gammel dame, men hun er eldre enn en middelaldrende dame. 7 Han hoppet over gjerdet med den største letthet. 8 Ingen hadde den minste (ringeste) mistanke.

**Exercise 39:** Jeg vil(le) (gjerne) ha et værelse (rom) til meg og min kone, noe pent og ganske sentralt, men ikke for dyrt. 2 Jeg trenger verken (en) nattklubb eller (en) badstue, men et svømmebasseng ville være fint. 3 Dette rommet har utsikt mot parken, mens det andre vender (ut) mot gaten. 4 Jeg tar dette, fordi jeg liker fred og ro. 5 Du (De) kan enten ta et tog eller fly.

#### CHAPTER 9

**Exercise 40:** 1 Når jeg er i Oslo, besøker jeg alltid Munch-Museet. 2 Da jeg var i Oslo i fjor, besøkte jeg Munch-Museet. 3 Når jeg kommer til Oslo neste år, skal (vil) jeg besøke Munch-Museet. 4 Jeg besøkte Munch-Museet mens jeg var i Oslo. 5 Idet jeg kom inn i museet, møtte jeg noen venner. 6 Etterat vi hadde sett bildene, spiste vi lunsj i restauranten. 7 Før vi forlot restauranten, sa vi adjø til våre venner. 8 Fordi vi ville se Vigelandsparken, tok vi en drosje. 9 Siden vi ikke hadde sett den før, ville vi nødiggå glipp av denne muligheten. 10 Hvis vi ikke så den denne gangen, er jeg redd vi ville angre det. 11 Selv om vi var litt trette, synes jeg det var umaken verdt. 12 For at hjemreisen skulle bli så lett som mulig, hadde vi allerede pakket koffertene.

**Exercise 41:** 1 Når vi sender varer til utlandet, er pakking en viktig faktor. 2 Etterat varene er pakket i fabrikk, blir de aldri håndtert igjen før de når bestemmelsesstedet.

3 Hvis vi finner at noe er galt med varene, må vi underrette fabrikantene med én gang. 4 Skjønt (Enda) bilen ikke var et fullstendig vrak, var skaden betydelig. 5 Det er ingen vits i å produsere varer med mindre de kan selges (bli solgt) til en rimelig pris innen en rimelig tid. 6 'Jeg skal svare på (besvare) dine spørsmål hvis jeg kan,' sa hun. 7 Å spørre (Å stille spørsmål) er mye (atskillig) lettere enn å svare, vet du. 8 Hvis et uhell hender, må du rapportere skaden til assuranceselskapet.

**Exercise 42A:** 1 Hvis bussen var forsinket, ville jeg ta en drosje. 2 Hvis jeg ikke hadde penger, ville jeg bruke mitt kredittkort. 3 Hvis betingelsene ikke var akseptable, ville herr Hansen (han) be om et nytt tilbud. 4 Hvis han hadde mye tid, ville han lære norsk. 5 Hvis jeg ble bestjålet, ville jeg tilkalle politiet. **B:** Jeg vil(le) (gjærne) ha en badedrakt, en T-skjorte og et par shorts.

**Exercise 43:** 1 Jeg synes (at) prisen er for høy. 2 Jeg er redd for at jeg ikke kan betale så mye. 3 Jeg håper De vil senke prisen. 4 Jeg undrer meg på om disse skoene passer (meg). 5 Kan jeg prøve dem på og se om de passer?

**Exercise 44A:** 1 På kysten, for eksempel i Bodø og i Bergen, er det ikke så kaldt om vinteren og ikke så varmt om sommeren som i Oslo og på Kongsberg. 2 I andre deler av landet, for eksempel i Finnmark, i Valdres og i Østerdalen, er vinteren meget lang. 3 Du vil finne de høyeste maksimumstemperaturene i innlandet, for eksempel i Telemark og i Hallingdal. Men noen ganger kan det være like så varmt i Nord-Norge som i Sør-Norge – på Sørlandet og på Østlandet. **B:** 1 Sverige – svensk – en svenske 2 England – engelsk – en engelskmann 3 Canada – kanadisk – en kanadier 4 Amerika – amerikansk – en amerikaner 5 Italia – italiensk – en italiener 6 Europa – europeisk – en europeer 7 Japan – japansk – en japaner. **C:** 1 i Paris, på Java, på New-Zealand, i Australia, på Ålandsøyene, i Tromsø, i Haugesund, på Kongsvinger, i Hordaland, på Vestlandet

## CHAPTER 10

**Exercise 45A:** 1 Fredsprisen blir overrakt av Nobelkomiteens formann. 2 New York Marathon er blitt vunnet av Grete Waitz ni ganger. 3 Restbeløpet ble betalt av kunden innen fristens utløp. 4 Denne stolen vil ikke lenger bli produsert av oss. **B:** 1 Jeg håper du vil lykkes. 2 De syntes synd på ham. 3 Det er det beste som finnes. 4 Vi møtes igjen ved neste korsvei.

**Exercise 46A:** 1 rennende vann 2 en fly(g)ende fugl 3 fallende priser 4 et voksende marked 5 et skuffende svar **B:** 1 To menn kom krypende mot ham. 2 Den lille gutten gikk gråtende bort. 3 Vi ble sittende. 4 Vi hørte henne synge. 5 Da vi hadde ventet (i) en halv time, så vi dem forlate huset. 6 Hvis du fortsetter å insistere, skal jeg gjøre det. 7 Ved å studere litt hver dag vil du lære norsk på tre måneder. 8 Liker du å svømme og (å) seile?

**Exercise 47:** 1 En fin jakthund med et pent hundehalsbånd. 2 Fabrikkarbeiderne krevde en betydelig lønnsforhøyelse og bedre arbeidsbetingelser. 2 Skolebarna gleder seg til syttendemaitoget. 4 Jeg har sendt fødselsdagsgaver og nyttårshilsener til alle mine venner og slektninger. 5 I ganske lang tid har Norge vært en av de ledende sjøfartsnasjoner med en betydelig handelsflåte. 6 Norge har snødekte fjelltopper og mange fiskevann.

**Exercise 48A:** 1 Vi arbeider på et kontor i byen. 2 De arbeider på en gård på landet. 3 Han arbeider på et lager, hun arbeider i en butikk. 4 Barna går på skolen. 5 På skolen lærer de å lese, skrive og regne. 6 I går gikk vi i selskap. Gjestene var i stuen i første etasje. 7 Vertinnen var på kjøkkenet og barna på soveværelset. 8 Liker du å gå på konsert? 9 Går dere ofte i kirken? **B:** 1 Hva snakket de om? 2 Jeg vet ikke noe om det. 3 Han spurte henne om hun røkte. 4 Hun bad ham om en sigarett. 5 Han var ikke sikker på om han hadde noen sigaretter.

## CHAPTER 11

**Exercise 49A:** 1 Vi drog fra England for en uke siden. 2 Vi hadde studert norsk i tre måneder. 3 Vi kommer til å bli i Norge i to uker. 4 Toget går om to timer. 5 Vi reiser først

om en halv time. 6 Jeg har ikke røkt på to år. **B:** 1 He was packing his suitcase. 2 He was about to (going to) leave the country. 3 They were having dinner. 4 We stood waiting for the bus. **C:** 1 Hun gikk til byen for å handle. 2 Hun ønsket å kjøpe noe godt for å overraske sin familie. 3 Men hun hadde ikke noen penger å kjøpe for.

**Exercise 50:** 1 Bor frøken Holm her? 2 Nei, hun gjør ikke det. 3 Er hun blitt syk? 4 Ja, jeg er redd for det. 5 Er hun på sykehuset? 6 Ja, hun er det (Ja, det er hun). 7 Jeg håpet at hun ville være bra nå. 8 Det gjorde vi også. Men jeg tror hun er litt bedre.

**Exercise 51:** 1 Det ligger en kirke på den andre siden av torget. 2 Det ligger en kniv på kjøkkenbenken. 3 Tønsberg ligger sør for Oslo. 4 Det står en vase på bordet. 5 Det står en sykkel i trappen. 6 Hva står det i avisen i dag? 7 Det sitter en dame og venter i entréen. 8 Han sitter og spiser frokost. 9 Satt du dårlig? 10 Går det deg godt? 11 Hvordan gikk det? 12 Dagene gikk så fort (raskt).

#### CHAPTER 12

**Exercise 52:** 1 Many Norwegians are proud of their country and long for praise from other nations. 2 They want to be respected for more than having a beautiful country and being descendants of the old Vikings. 3 They are very interested in sport and work hard to keep up with other nations. 4 They rejoice without inhibition at every victory in international competitions and are immensely disappointed at every defeat. 5 They complain about the referee or put the blame on injured players when their team loses an international football match. 6 Some people think that the Norwegians must suffer from an enormous inferiority complex. 7 Others feel like laughing at the whole thing and consider that the Norwegians resemble other people in that respect.

**Exercise 53A:** 1 et kokt egg 2 en ribbet kylling 3 en flådd bjørn 4 et frigjort land 5 et strøket lommeterkle 6 en frosset (frossen) finger **B:** 1 det kokte egget – kokte egg – de kokte eggene 2 den ribbede kyllingen – ribbede kyllinger – de ribbede kyllingene 6 den frosne fingeren – frosne fingrer – de frosne fingrene

**Exercise 54A:** 1 Dere har hatt en hyggelig ferie, har dere ikke det? 2 Du er fornøyd med oppholdet i Norge, er du ikke det? 3 Dere skal ikke reise før i morgen, skal dere vel? 4 Dere har ikke glemt noe, har dere vel? 5 Dere kommer igjen neste år, gjør dere ikke det? **B:** 1 Vi kommer i slutten av juli, tror jeg. 2 Dere (Du) burde komme i september, forstår dere (du). 3 Det er den beste tiden for å fiske, vet dere (du). **C:** 1 Du liker vel å fiske? 2 Ja, det roer meg liksom ned. 3 Fikk du noe fisk i år, forresten? 4 Nei, men det var vel litt tidlig på året. 5 Du vil nok ha mer hell med deg neste år. **D:** 1 Ja, det var slutten på ferien. (Ja, så var ferien slutt, da.) 2 Nei, så trist (da)! 3 Jaja, det er ikke noe å gjøre med det. 4 Hils din søster (søsteren din) fra meg da! 5 Ja, det skal jeg gjøre. 6 Morna! (Morn da!) 7 God fornøyelse! 8 Gjør som du vil, du. 9 Han er sterk, han! 10 Han er ikke sterk, jeg er sterk, jeg. **E:** 1 Vær så snill og lukk vinduet! (Vær så snill å lukke vinduet!) 2 Vær så snill og (å) si meg om tiden passer deg. 3 Vær så god og sitt ned (å sitte ned)! 4 Vær så snill og fortell (å fortelle) meg om det!

# Appendix

## Norwegian spelling

Even if the main objective of your study is to learn to speak and understand Norwegian, some basic information about its spelling rules may be helpful.

On page 8 of this course we mentioned the general spelling rule that a long vowel is usually followed by a single consonant and a short vowel by a double consonant:

| <i>Long</i>     | <i>Short</i>                            |
|-----------------|---|
| våt wet         | vott mitten                             |
| bok book        | bukk bow                                |
| gul yellow      | gull gold                               |
| å lese to read  | å lesse to load                         |
| å vise to show  | visse ( <i>plural of viss</i> ) certain |
| å nyte to enjoy | nytten the benefit                      |

This is a rule with many exceptions. A lot of common words with a short vowel are written with only one consonant, such as **at** 'that', **hvis** 'if', **nok** 'enough', **vel** 'well' and the present tense forms of the modal auxiliaries: **skal**, **kan**, **bør**, **vil**.

Note also that double **m** never appears at the end of words:

|                    |                                |
|--------------------|--------------------------------|
| dum foolish        | dumme ( <i>plural of dum</i> ) |
| en dom a judgement | dommen the judgement           |
| Kom! Come!         | å komme to come                |

Before inflectional endings beginning with a consonant, a double consonant is changed into a single one:

|                  |                                |
|------------------|--------------------------------|
| å spille to play | spilte played                  |
| å falle to fall  | falt fell                      |
| tykk thick, fat  | tykt ( <i>neuter of tykk</i> ) |
| sann true        | sant ( <i>neuter of sann</i> ) |

This reduction of the double consonant also occurs before the endings **-ne**, **-ning**, **-sel**, **-ling** and **-sk**:

|                  |                          |
|------------------|--------------------------|
| lett light       | å letne to lighten       |
| å bygge to build | en bygning a building    |
| å brenne to burn | brensel fuel             |
| ætt family       | ætling descendant        |
| troll troll      | trolsk magic, bewitching |

Important exceptions are:

|   |
|---|
| fullt ( <i>neuter of full</i> ) full      |
| spisst ( <i>neuter of spiss</i> ) pointed |
| visste – visst knew – known               |

A long vowel is sometimes changed into a short one, as in:

|                  |                                |
|------------------|--------------------------------|
| å lete to search | lette searched                 |
| å se to see      | sett seen                      |
| blå blue         | blått ( <i>neuter of blå</i> ) |

Note also that adjectives endings in **-el**, **-en**, **-er** drop their **-e** before an inflectional ending beginning with **-e**:

|            |                         |
|------------|-------------------------|
| edel noble | edle ( <i>plural</i> )  |
| doven lazy | dovne ( <i>plural</i> ) |

**munter** merry **muntre** merrier **muntrest** merriest

The **-e** in **-el** and **-er** is also dropped in the plural of nouns:

|                     |                   |                       |
|---------------------|-------------------|-----------------------|
| engelen the angel   | engler angels     | englene the angels    |
| fingeren the finger | finger(e) fingers | fingerene the fingers |

# Mini-dictionary

## English–Norwegian

Although the following is not an exhaustive list of words found in the book, it will be helpful for quick reference. Numbers against some entries indicate chapters, sections and pages where irregular verbs and other important points are explained. See also the index on page 230.

**able, to be able** å kunne, *sec. 29*  
**about** om  
**above** over  
**abroad** i utlandet  
**accept** (*vb*) motta, godta  
**accident** uhell (*n*), ulykke (*c*)  
**admit** innrømme  
**advance: in advance** på forhånd  
**advice** råd (*n*)  
**aeroplane** fly (*n*)  
**afraid** (of) redd (for)  
**after** etter  
**afternoon** ettermiddag (*c*)  
**afterwards** etterpå  
**again** igjen  
**against** mot  
**age** alder, tid (*c*)  
**ago** for ... siden  
**air** luft (*c*)  
**airport** flyplass (*c*)  
**all** all, alt, hel  
**along** langs  
**already** allerede  
**also** også  
**although** enda, skjønt  
**always** alltid  
**America** Amerika

**American** amerikaner (*c*), amerikansk  
**amid** midt iblant  
**and** og  
**angel** engel (*c*)  
**answer** (*vb*) svare  
**answer** svar (*n*)  
**any** noen *sec. 38*  
**appear** dukke opp, vise seg  
**apple** eple (*n*)  
**arm** arm (*c*)  
**arrange** ordne, arrangere  
**arrive** (at) komme frem (til), (an) komme (til)  
**as** idet, ettersom *sec. 46*  
**as ... as** liksom ... som *sec. 44*  
**as if** som om *sec. 46*  
**ashamed** skamfull  
**ask** (for) spørre (etter) (*irreg.*) *secs 21, 28*  
**asleep** i søvn  
**at** på, ved  
**at last** til slutt  
**at least** minst  
**attentively** oppmerksomt  
**aunt** tante  
**autumn** høst (*c*)  
**avoid** unngå (*irreg.*) *page 156*  
**away** av sted

**back** tilbake  
**backwards** bakover  
**bad, badly** dårlig  
**bag** veske, pose (*c*)  
**bank** bank (*c*)  
**bank robbery** bankran (*n*)  
**bar** bar (*c*)  
**barred** sperret  
**bathroom** bad (*n*)  
**be** (*vb*) være (*irreg.*) *see Index*  
**bear** bjørn (*c*)  
**beard** skjegg (*n*)  
**because** fordi  
**become** bli (*irreg.*) *secs 22, 28*  
**bed** seng (*c*)  
**go to bed** legge seg (*irreg.*) *sec. 42*  
**bedroom** soveværelse (*n*)  
**beer** øl (*n*)  
**before** før, innen  
**begin** begynne  
**beginning** begynnelse (*c*)  
**behaviour** atferd, oppførsel (*c*)  
**behind** bak  
**Belgian** belgier (*c*), belgisk  
**Belgium** Belgia  
**believe** tro  
**belong to** tilhøre  
**bend** (*vb*) bøye  
**bend down** (*vb*) bøye seg *sec. 42*  
**besides** forresten  
**better** bedre  
**between** mellom  
**big** stor  
**bill** regning (*c*)  
**bird** fugl (*c*)  
**birthday present** fødselsdagsgave (*c*)  
**black** sort, svart  
**blame** skyld (*c*)  
**bleed** blø  
**blouse** bluse (*c*)

**blow** (*vb*) blåse  
**blue** blå  
**boat** båt (*c*)  
**boil** koke  
**book** (*vb*) bestille  
**book** bok (*c*)  
**border** grense (*c*)  
**boring** kjedelig  
**boss** sjef (*c*)  
**both** begge  
**both ... and** både ... og  
**bottle** flaske (*c*)  
**bow** bukk (*n*)  
**boy** gutt (*c*)  
**brave** tapper, modig  
**bread** brød (*n*)  
**break** (*vb*) brette (*irreg.*) *sec. 28*  
**breakfast** frokost (*c*)  
**bright** lys  
**bring** (*vb*) bringe (*irreg.*) *secs 21, 28*  
**Britain** Storbritannia  
**British** britisk  
**brother** bror (*c*)  
**brother-in-law** svoger (*c*)  
**brown** brun  
**build** bygge  
**building** bygning (*c*)  
**burn** (*vb*) brenne  
**bus** buss (*c*)  
**business** forretning (*c*)  
**busy** travel, opptatt  
**but** men  
**buy** kjøpe  
**by** av, ved  
**by the way** forresten

**café** kafé (*c*)  
**cake** kake (*c*)  
**call** (*vb*) kalle, tilkalle  
**can** (to be able) kan (*irreg.*) *sec. 29*



**Canada** Canada  
**Canadian** kanadier (c),  
kanadisk  
**car** bil (c)  
**car driver** bilfører (c)  
**care** omsorg (c)  
**carpet** teppe (n)  
**carry** bære (irreg.) secs 22, 28  
**cash** (vb) innløse, heve  
**cash desk** kasse (c)  
**catch** (vb) fange, ta  
**cause** sak, årsak (c)  
**ceiling** tak (n)  
**celebrate** (vb) feire  
**certain** viss, sikker  
**certainly** javel  
**chair** stol (c)  
**chairman** formann (c)  
**change** (vb) forandre (seg)  
**cheese** ost (c)  
**cheque** sjekk (c)  
**child** barn (c)  
**China** Kina  
**choice** valg (n)  
**Christmas** jul (c)  
**church** kirke (c)  
**cinema** kino (n)  
**city** by (c)  
**clean** (vb) rense  
**cling** klynge seg  
**close** (vb) lukke  
**clothes** klær (cpl)  
**cloud** sky (c)  
**clumsy** klosset  
**cluster** klynge (c)  
**coach** trener (c)  
**coast** kyst (c)  
**cod** torsk (c)  
**coffee** kaffe (c)  
**cold** kald  
**cold** forkjølelse (c)  
**to have a cold** å være forkjølet

**collect** (vb) samle, hente  
**colour** farge (c)  
**come** komme (irreg.) secs 22, 28  
**comfortable** behagelig  
**competition** konkurranse (c)  
**complain** (of) klage (over, på)  
**complete**(ly) fullstendig  
**congratulate** gratulere,  
lykkønske  
**considerable** betydelig  
**content** fornøyd, tilfreds  
**conversation** samtale (c)  
**corner** hjørne (n)  
**correct** riktig  
**cost** (vb) koste  
**count** (vb) telle, regne  
**count on** regne med  
**couple** par (n)  
**course** kurs (n)  
**cousin** søskenbarn (n)  
**female cousin** kusine (c)  
**male cousin** fetter (c)  
**cover** (vb) dekke  
**cow** ku (f) secs 1, 2  
**crawl** (vb) krype (irreg.)  
sec. 55, voc.  
**crazy** gal  
**credit card** kredittkort (n)  
**cross** (vb) krysse, gå over  
**crossroads** veikryss (n)  
**cruise** sjøreise (c)  
**cry** (vb) gråte (irreg.) secs 22, 28  
**cupboard** skap (n)  
**curious** spent  
**curse** (vb) skjelle ut  
**customer** kunde (c)  
**cut** (vb) skjære (irreg.) secs 22, 28  
  
**daily** daglig  
**damage** skade (c)  
**dangerous** farlig  
**date** dato (c)

**daughter** datter (c)  
**day** dag (c)  
**dear** kjær  
**debt** gjeld (c)  
**decide** bestemme  
**deck** dekk (n)  
**decrease** (vb) synke  
**defeat** nederlag (n)  
**degree** grad (c)  
**delicious** nydelig  
**demand** (vb) kreve  
**department store**  
varemagasin (n)  
**depend** (on) avhenge (av)  
**depressed** deprimerert, nedtrykt  
**destination** bestemmelsessted  
(n)  
**die** dø (irreg.) secs 21, 28  
**difficult** vanskelig  
**difficulty** vanskelighet (c)  
**dinner** middag (c)  
**disappoint** skuffe  
**discourage** ta motet fra  
**distinct** klar, tydelig  
**divorce** (vb) skille seg  
**do** gjøre (irreg.) secs 21, 28  
**that'll do** det klarer seg  
**doctor** lege, doktor (c)  
**dog** hund (c)  
**door** dør (c)  
**doubt** (vb) tvile  
**down** ned, nede sec. 31  
**downwards** nedover  
**dream** drøm (c)  
**dress** (vb) kle (på seg)  
**dress** kjole (c)  
**drink** (vb) drikke (irreg.) secs  
22, 28  
**drive** (vb) kjøre  
**driver** bilfører (c)  
**during** under

**each** hver, enhver sec. 38  
**each other** hverandre  
**eager** ivrig  
**early** tidlig  
**Easter** påske (c)  
**easy** lett  
**eat** spise  
**education** undervisning,  
oppdragelse (c)  
**effort** anstrengelse (c)  
**either ... or** enten ... eller  
**election** valg (n)  
**empty** tom  
**end** (vb) ende, slutte  
**end** ende, slutt (c)  
**engaged** forlovet  
**England** England  
**English** engelsk  
**enjoy** glede seg over, nyte  
**enough** nok  
**enter** gå inn  
**entertaining** underholdende  
**enthusiasm** begeistring (c)  
**entrance** inngang (c)  
**entry** entré (c)  
**envelope** konvolutt (c)  
**Europe** Europa  
**European** europeisk, europeer (c)  
**even** selv, endog  
**even if** selv om  
**evening** aften, kveld (c)  
**every** hver sec. 38  
**everybody, everyone** alle,  
enhver  
**everything** alt sec. 38  
**excuse** (vb) unnskyld  
**exercise** øvelse (c)  
**expect** vente, forvente  
**expensive** dyr  
**experience** erfaring (c)  
**express** (vb) uttrykke  
**extra** ekstra

face ansikt (n)  
factory fabrikk (c)  
fair lys, rimelig  
fairly nokså, temmelig  
fairy tale eventyr (n)  
faithful trofast  
fall (vb) falle (irreg.) sec. 55, voc.  
family familie (c)  
famous berømt  
far langt  
farm bondegård (c)  
farmer bonde (c)  
far-off fjern  
fashionable moderne  
fast fort  
father far (c)  
feel føle  
fence gjerde (n)  
fetch hente  
fill fylle  
finally til slutt  
find finne (irreg.) secs 22, 28  
fine fin(t)  
finish (vb) avslutte  
firm firma (n)  
first først  
fish fisk (c)  
fishing fiske (n), fising (c)  
  go fishing dra på fisketur  
fishing boat fiskerbåt (c)  
fit (vb) passe  
fit frisk, i form  
floor gulv (n)  
flower blomst (c)  
fly (vb) fly(ge) (irreg.) sec. 55, voc.  
foal føll (n)  
foggy tåket  
food mat (c)  
fool tosk (c)  
foolish dum  
football match fotballkamp (c)

for for  
for instance for eksempel  
forehead panne (c)  
foreigner utlending (c)  
forest skog (c)  
forget glemme  
forgive tilgi (irreg.) Chapter 8, page 125  
fork gaffel (c)  
fortunately heldigvis  
forward fremover  
France Frankrike  
freeze (vb) fryse (irreg.) secs 22, 28  
French fransk  
fresh frisk, fersk  
fridge kjøleskap (n)  
friend venn (c)  
frighten skremme  
from fra  
front: in front of foran  
front door entrédør (c)  
fruit frukt (c)  
fry (vb) steke  
fuel brensel (n)  
full (of) full (av)  
fun moro (c)  
funny morsom, rar  
fur pels (c)  
garden hage (c)  
general generell, alminnelig  
German tysk  
Germany Tyskland  
get få, bli (irreg.) secs 30, voc., 37  
get up stå opp (irreg.) sec. 63, voc.  
girl pike (c), jente (f)  
give gi (irreg.) secs 22, 28  
give up oppgi  
glacier bre (c)  
glass glass (n)

go gå (irreg.) secs 22, 28, reise  
go on fortsette (irreg.) sec. 55, voc.  
goat geit (f)  
gold gull (n)  
good god  
goodbye adjø, farvel  
goods varer (cpl)  
gradually litt etter litt  
Great Britain Storbritannia  
Greece Hellas  
green grønn  
greeting hilsen (c)  
grocery kolonialhandel (c)  
grow vokse  
guest gjest (c)  
Gulf Stream Golfstrømmen  
hair hår (n)  
half halv  
ham skinke (c)  
hand hånd (c)  
handbag veske (c)  
handkerchief lommetørkle (n)  
hang henge  
happy glad, lykkelig  
hard hard, vanskelig, kraftig  
hardly knapt, neppe  
hat hatt (c)  
have ha (irreg.) see Index  
have to (must) måtte (irreg.) sec. 29  
head hode (n)  
headache hodepine (c)  
health helse (c)  
hear høre  
heart hjerte (n)  
heat varme (c)  
heavy tung  
help (vb) hjelpe (irreg.) secs 22, 28  
her hennes secs. 15, 19

here her, hit sec. 31  
hers hennes sec. 16  
hesitate nøle  
hide gjemme (seg)  
high høy  
him sec. 19  
his hans secs 15, 16  
hole hull (n)  
home hjem sec. 31  
  at home hjemme  
homework lekser (cpl)  
hope (vb) håpe  
hospital sykehus (n)  
hostess vertinne (c)  
hot varm  
hotel hotell (n)  
hour time (c)  
house hus (n)  
how hvordan sec. 11  
how are you? hvordan står det til?  
how many hvor mange  
how much hvor mye  
hungry sulten  
hurry (vb) skynde seg  
husband (ekte)mann (c)  
hut hytte (f)  
ice is (c)  
ice cream iskrem (c)  
idea idé (c)  
if hvis, om secs 46, 48, 49  
ill syk  
immediately straks  
immensely umåtelig  
important viktig  
impossible umulig  
in (prep) i secs 52, 57  
in (adv) inn, inne sec. 31  
in order to for å sec. 60  
increase (vb) øke  
indeed virkelig



**information** opplysninger  
(*cpl*)

**inland** innenlands (*adv*),  
innland (*n*)

**inside** innenfor, inne *sec. 31*

**insure** forsikre

**insurance company**

forsikringsselskap (*n*)

**interested (in)** interessert (*i*)

**invitation** innbydelse (*c*)

**invite** be (*irreg.*) *sec. 31, voc.*

**Ireland** Irland

**Irish** irsk

**Italy** Italia

**Italian** italiener (*c*), italiensk

**jam** syltetøy (*n*)

**Japan** Japan

**Japanese** japansk

**job** jobb (*c*), arbeid (*n*)

**join** (*vb*) bli med

**judgement** dom (*c*)

**jump** hoppe

**just** nettopp, akkurat

**just as** like, likså

**keep on** fortsette (*irreg.*) *sec. 55, voc.*

**keep up with** være på  
høyde med

**key** nøkkel (*c*)

**kill** drepe

**kind** slag (*n*)

**kind** snill

**kindness** snillhet (*c*)

**king** konge (*c*)

**kitchen** kjøkken (*n*)

**knee** kne (*n*)

**knife** kniv (*c*)

**knock** (*vb*) banke

**know** vite (*irreg.*) *sec. 29*

**lady** dame (*c*)

**lake** vann (*n*)

**lamp** lampe (*c*)

**language** språk (*n*)

**Lapp** same (*c*)

**large** stor

**last** sist

at last til slutt

**late** sen

**lazy** doven

**learn** lære

**least** minst

at least i det minste

**leave** (*vb*) reise, forlate (*irreg.*)  
*sec. 35, voc.*

**left: on/to the left** til venstre

**leg** ben (*n*)

**less** mindre *sec. 30*

**lesson** leksjon, lekse (*c*)

**let** la (*irreg.*) *sec. 28*

**letter** brev (*n*)

**lie** ligge (*irreg.*) *sec. 63, voc.*

**life** liv (*n*)

**light** lett, lys

**lighten** letne

**like** (*vb*) like

I'd like jeg vil (gjærne) ha

**limp** (*vb*) halte

**listen (to)** lytte (til)

**little** liten, lite *secs 6, 7*

a little litt

**live** leve, bo

**load** (*vb*) lesse

**loaf of bread** brød (*n*)

**lock** (*vb*) låse

**long** lang, lenge *secs 18B, 30*

**look (at)** se (på) (*irreg.*) *secs 22, 28*

**look for** se etter

**lorry** lastebil (*c*)

**lose** tape, miste

get lost gå seg vill

**lot: a lot** mye, atskillig

**lots of** mange

**loud** (*adv*) høyt

**love** (*vb*) elske, like

**love** kjærlighet (*c*)

**lovely** deilig

**lower** (*vb*) senke

**luck** lykke, hell (*n*)

**lucky** heldig

**luggage** bagasje (*c*)

**lunch** lunsj (*c*)

**luncheon** **meat** skinkerull (*c*)

**mad** gal

**magnificent** storslagen,

praktfull

**main** **dish** hovedrett (*c*)

**make** gjøre *sec. 21*

**man** mann (*c*)

**manufacturer** fabrikant (*c*)

**many** mange

**map** kart (*n*)

**market** marked, torg (*n*)

**marry** gifte seg med

get married gifte seg

**may** kan *sec. 29*

**me** meg *sec. 19*

**meadow** eng (*f*)

**meal** måltid (*n*)

**mean** (*vb*) mene

**meat** kjøtt (*n*)

**meet** (*vb*) møte, treffe (*irreg.*)  
*sec. 31, voc.*

**meeting** møte (*n*)

**mention** (*vb*) nevne

**merchant** **fleet** handelsflåte (*c*)

**merry** munter

**midday** middag

**middle: in the middle of** midt i

**middle-aged** middelaldrende

**midnight** midnatt

**mild** mild

**milk** melk (*c*)

**mine** min, mitt, mine *sec. 16*

**minute** minutt (*n*)

**miss** (*vb*) savne, gå glipp av

**mitten** vott (*c*)

**modern** moderne

**moment** øyeblikk (*n*)

**money** penger (*cpl*)

**month** måned (*c*)

**more** mer

**morning** morgen (*c*)

**mother** mor (*c*)

**motive** hensikt (*c*)

**mountain** fjell (*n*)

**mourn** sørge (over)

**much** mye, meget

**museum** museum (*n*)

**must (to have to)** må (*irreg.*)  
*sec. 29*

**my** min, mitt, mine *secs 15, 16*

**myself** (jeg) selv *sec. 42*

**name** navn (*n*)

what is your name?

hva heter du?

**naturally** naturligvis

**near** nær

**necessary** nødvendig

**need** (*vb*) trenge

**neighbour** nabo (*c*)

**neither ... nor** verken ... eller

**Netherlands** Nederland

**never** aldri

**new** ny

**newspaper** avis (*c*)

**next** neste

**next to** ved siden av

**nice** god, søt, hyggelig

**niece** niese (*c*)

**night** natt, kveld

**nightclub** nattklubb (*c*)

**no** nei, ingen *sec. 38*

**no longer** ikke lenger  
**no more** ikke mer  
**no one** ingen *sec. 38*  
**noise** bråk (*n*), lyd (*c*)  
**north** nord  
**North Cape** Nordkapp  
**north wind** nordavind (*c*)  
**Norway** Norge  
**Norwegian** norsk,  
nordmann (*c*)  
**nothing** ingenting *sec. 38*  
**now** nå  
**number** nummer, (an)tall (*n*)  
  
**occur** hende  
**of av**  
**of course** selvfølgelig  
**office** kontor (*n*)  
**often** ofte  
**old** gammel *sec. 18B*  
**on på**  
**once** en gang  
    **once again** enda en gang  
    **at once** med én gang  
**one-way traffic** enveisjøring  
(*c*)  
**only** bare  
**open** (*vb*) åpne  
**open** åpen  
**opera** opera (*c*)  
**opportunity** anledning (*c*)  
**or** eller  
**order** (*vb*) bestille  
    **in order to** for å *sec. 60*  
**ordinary** vanlig  
**organise** organisere  
**other** annen *sec. 38*  
**otherwise** ellers  
**ought to** bør, burde *sec. 29*  
**our** vår *sec. 15*  
**ours** vår *sec. 16*  
**out** ut, ute *sec. 31*

**outside** utenfor, ute  
**over** over  
**overcoat** frakk (*c*)  
**overcrowded** overfylt  
**oversleep** forsove seg  
**own** (*vb*) eie  
**own** egen  
**owner** eier (*c*)  
  
**pack** (*vb*) pakke  
**paint** (*vb*) male  
**palace** slott (*n*)  
**parents** foreldre (*cpl*)  
**park** park (*c*)  
**part** del (*c*)  
**party** selskap (*n*)  
**passport** pass (*n*)  
**pay** betale  
**peace** fred (*c*)  
**pedestrian** fotgjenger (*c*)  
**people** mennesker (*cpl*)  
**perhaps** kanskje  
**picture** bilde (*n*)  
**piece** stykke (*n*)  
**plan** (*vb*) planlegge (*irreg.*)  
    *Chapter 7, page 111*  
**plan** plan (*c*)  
**plane** fly (*n*)  
**play** (*vb*) leke, spille  
**pleasant** hyggelig  
**please** vær så snill/god  
**please** (*vb*) behag  
**pleased** fornøyd  
**pleasure** glede  
**plenty** mange, mye  
**pluck** ribbe  
**plumber** rørlegger (*c*)  
**point** poeng (*n*)  
**pointed** spiss  
**Poland** Polen  
**polar bear** isbjørn (*c*)  
**police** politi (*n*)

**politician** politiker (*c*)  
**poor** fattig, stakkars  
**popular** populær  
**pork chop** svinekotelett (*c*)  
**possible** mulig  
**possibility** mulighet (*c*)  
**postcard** (post)kort (*n*)  
**post office** postkontor (*n*)  
**potato** potet (*c*)  
**pour** helle, skylle  
**prefer** foretrekke (*irreg.*)  
    *Chapter 11, page 168*  
**prepare** forberede, lage  
**pretty** vakker, pen  
**prevent** unngå (*irreg.*) *Chapter*  
    *10, page 157, forebygge*  
**price** pris (*c*)  
**probable** sannsynlig  
**probably** sannsynnligvis  
**produce** (*vb*) produsere, lage  
**profession** yrke (*n*)  
**promise** (*vb*) love  
**properly** pyntelig  
**proposal** forslag, tilbud (*n*)  
**protect** beskytte  
**proud** stolt  
**pull** (*vb*) trekke (*irreg.*) *sec. 22*  
**pull oneself together** ta seg  
sammen  
**put** (*vb*) sette, legge (*irreg.*)  
    *Chapter 11, page 167*  
**put on weight** legge på seg  
  
**question** spørsmål (*n*)  
**quick** rask  
**quickly** raskt, fort  
**quilted anorak** boblejakke (*c*)  
**quite** ganske, nokså  
  
**railway station** jernbane-  
stasjon (*c*)  
**rain** regne

**raincoat** regnfrakk (*c*)  
**rather** nokså, temmelig  
**reach** (*vb*) rekke, (*irreg.*) *sec. 47,*  
    *voc. nå*  
**react** reagere  
**read** lese  
**readily** gjerne, lett  
**ready** ferdig  
**realise** innse  
**really** virkelig  
**reason** grunn, årsak (*c*)  
**reasonable** rimelig  
**recently** nylig  
**reckon with** regne med  
**recommend** anbefale  
**recover** bli frisk  
**red** rød  
**refuse** (*vb*) nekte  
**regards** hilsener (*cpl*)  
**regret** (*vb*) angre  
**reindeer** reinsdyr (*n*)  
**rejoice** (at) glede seg (over)  
**relax** slappe av  
**remain** (for)bli (*irreg.*) *secs 22, 28*  
**remember** (*vb*) huske  
**repair** (*vb*) reparere  
**repair** reparasjon (*c*)  
**report** (*vb*) rapportere  
**report** reportasje (*c*)  
**resemble** ligne  
**respect** (*vb*) respektere  
**responsibility** ansvar (*n*)  
**rest** (*vb*) hvile seg  
**rest** rest (*c*)  
**restaurant** restaurant (*c*)  
**return** (*vb*) vende tilbake  
**ribbon** bånd (*n*)  
**rich** rik  
**rid: get rid of** bli kvitt  
**right** riktig; høyre  
    **on/to the right** til høyre  
    **be right** ha rett

**rise** (vb) stå opp (irreg.) sec. 30, voc.

**road** vei (c)

**rock** klippe (c)

**room** rom, værelse (n)

**round** rund(t)

**run** (vb) løpe (irreg.) secs 22, 28

**rural district** bygd (f)

**sad** trist

**sail** (vb) seile

**sailing boat** seilbåt (c)

**salary** gasje (c)

**salmon** laks (c)

**salt-water fish** saltvannsfisk (c)

**sandwich** sandwich (c)

**open sandwich** smørbrød (n)

**sausage** pølse (c)

**say** si (irreg.) secs 22 voc., 28

**scar** arr (n)

**scarf** skjerf (n)

**school** skole (c)

**Scotland** Skottland

**Scottish** skotsk

**sea** sjø (c), hav (n)

**seal** sel (c)

**season** årstid (c)

**seat** sete (n)

**see** se (irreg.) secs 22, 28

**seem** synes sec. 54, se ut

**seldom** sjelden

**sell** selge (irreg.) secs 21, 28

**send** sende

**sense** sans (c)

**serious** alvorlig

**serve** servere

**several** flere

**shall** skal sec. 29

**shame** skam (c)

**shape** form (c)

**share** aksje (c)

**shellfish** skalldyr (n)

**ship** skip (n)

**shipping** skipsfart (c)

**shirt** skjorte (c)

**shoe** sko (c)

**shop** (vb) handle, gjøre innkjøp

**shop** butikk (c)

**shop assistant** ekspeditør (c)

**shopkeeper** kjøpmann (c)

**short** kort

**show** (vb) vise

**shower** dusj, regnskur (c)

**shut** (vb) lukke

**side** side (c)

**silly** dum, tåpelig

**silver** sølv (n)

**since** siden

**sister** søster (c)

**sister-in-law** svigerinne (c)

**sit** (vb) sitte (irreg.) sec. 63, voc.

**sit down** sette seg (irreg.) sec. 43, voc.

**sitting room** stue (c)

**situated: to be s.** ligge (irreg.) sec. 63, voc.

**skate** (vb) gå på skøyter

**ski** (vb) gå på ski

**skin** (vb) flå

**skirt** skjørt (n)

**sky** himmel (c)

**sledge** (vb) ake

**sleep** (vb) sove (irreg.),

Chapter 6, page 99

**slice** skive (c)

**slim** (vb) slanke seg

**slow** langsam

**small** liten secs 6, 7

**smart** smart, gløgg

**smell** lukt (c)

**smile** (vb) smile

**smoke** (vb) røy(ke)

**snow** sne, snø (c)

**so** så

**some** noen sec. 38

**something** noe sec. 38

**son** sønn (c)

**soon** snart

**as soon as** så snart som

**sorry** lei, bedrøvet

**I'm sorry to say** desverre

**soup** suppe (c)

**south** (of) sør (for)

**Spain** Spania

**Spanish** spansk

**speak** snakke

**so to speak** så å si

**spectacles** briller (cpl)

**speed** fart (c)

**spend** (money) bruke

**spend** (time) tilbringe (irreg.) sec. 28, voc.

**spoon** skje (c)

**sportswear** sportsklær (cpl)

**spring** vår (c)

**square** torg (n)

**squirrel** ekorn (n)

**staircase** trapp (c)

**stairway** trappeoppgang (c)

**stand** (vb) stå (irreg.) sec. 63, voc.

**start** (vb) begynne

**starter** forrett (c)

**station** stasjon (c)

**stay** (vb) bli (irreg.)

secs 22, 28, bo

**stay** opphold (n)

**steal** stjele (irreg.) sec. 43, voc.

**steep** bratt

**still** (adj) stille

**still** (adv) ennå, enda

**stone** stein (c)

**stop** stopp (n)

**storehouse** lager (n)

**straight on** rett frem

**street** gate (c)

**strike** streik (c)

**strong** sterk

**study** (vb) studere

**succeed** lykkes sec. 54

**sudden**(ly) plutselig

**suffer** (from) lide (av) (irreg.)

Chapter 12, page 145

**suit** dress (c)

**suitcase** koffert (c)

**summer** sommer (c)

**summit** topp (c)

**supermarket** supermarked (n)

**supper** aftensmat (c)

**support** (vb) støtte

**sure** sikker

**surprise** (vb) overraske

**surprise** overraskelse (c)

**survive** overleve

**suspicion** mistanke (c)

**sweater** genser (c)

**Sweden** Sverige

**sweet** søt

**sweets** godter, søtsaker (cpl)

**swim** (vb) svømme, bade

**swimsuit** badedrakt (c)

**Switzerland** Sveits

**table** bord (n)

**take** ta (irreg.) secs 22, 28

**take care of** ta seg av

**take part** delta

**talk** (vb) snakke

**tall** høy

**tape** bånd (n)

**taste** (vb) smake

**taxi** drosje (c)

**tea** te (c)

**teacher** lærer (c)

**team** lag (c)

**tease** erte

**telephone** telefon (c)

**television** fjernsyn (n)

tell fortelle (*irreg.*) Chapter 7,  
page 112  
to tell the truth sant å si  
term frist, sikt (*c*)  
terms betingelser (*cpl*)  
terrible forferdelig  
terrified vettskremt  
than enn  
thank you! takk!  
thanks to takket være  
that, this *sec.* 13  
that at *sec.* 50  
that much så mye  
thaw (*vb*) tine, tø  
their deres *sec.* 15  
theirs deres *sec.* 16  
then da, så, derpå  
there der, dit *sec.* 31  
these, those *sec.* 13  
thin tynn  
think tenke, tro  
thrive trives *sec.* 54  
through gjennom  
go through with gjennomføre  
throw kaste  
ticket billett (*c*)  
tie slips  
tights strømpebukser (*cpl*)  
till til, inntil  
time tid, gang (*c*)  
by this time på denne tiden  
have a good time hygge seg  
some other time en annen  
gang  
tired trett  
to til; å  
today i dag  
together sammen  
tomorrow i morgen  
too også  
too much for mye  
tooth tann (*c*)

towards mot  
town by (*c*)  
train tog (*n*)  
translation oversettelse (*c*)  
travel (*vb*) reise  
travel agency reisebyrå (*c*)  
travel sickness reisesyke (*c*)  
traveller's cheque reisesjekk (*c*)  
tree tre (*n*)  
trip reise (*c*)  
trouble strev, bry (*n*)  
trousers bukser (*cpl*)  
true sant  
trust (*vb*) stole på  
truth sannhet (*c*)  
try (*vb*) prøve  
turn (*vb*) snu, vende  
turn on skru på  
twist (*vb*) vri

umbrella paraply (*c*)  
under under  
understand forstå (*irreg.*) *sec.*  
30, *voc.*  
underwear undertøy (*n*)  
unfortunately uheldigvis  
United States De forente stater  
unless med mindre  
until til, inntil  
up opp, oppe *sec.* 31  
upwards oppover  
use (*vb*) bruke  
used to vant til  
usual vanlig  
usually vanligvis

van varebil (*c*)  
vegetable grønnsak (*c*)  
veil slør (*n*)  
very meget, svært  
vest undertrøye (*c*)  
victory seier (*c*)

visit (*vb*) besøke  
visitor besøkende, gjest (*c*)  
wait (*for*) vente (på)  
waiter kelner (*c*)  
wake up vekke, våkne  
walk (*vb*) gå (*irreg.*) *secs* 22, 28  
go for a walk gå en tur,  
spasere  
walking tour, walk spasertur,  
fottur (*c*)  
wall vegg, mur (*c*)  
wallet lommebok (*c*)  
want (*vb*) ønske  
warehouse lager (*n*)  
warm varm  
wash (*vb*) vaske (seg)  
watch (*vb*) se på  
watch ur (*n*), klokke (*c*)  
waterfall foss (*c*)  
way vei (*c*)  
by the way forresten  
wear (*vb*) bruke  
weather vær (*n*)  
week uke (*c*)  
weekend helg (*c*)  
welcome velkommen  
well godt, vel, bra  
Welsh valisisk  
wet våt  
what hva *secs* 11, 43  
what about hva med  
whatever hva ... enn *sec.* 43  
wheel ratt, hjul (*n*)  
when når, da *secs.* 11, 46  
where hvor *sec.* 11  
which hvilken *sec.* 11; som  
*sec.* 43  
while stund (*c*)  
while mens *secs* 45, 46  
white hvit

who, whom hvem *sec.*, 11;  
som *sec.* 43  
whole hel  
why hvorfor *sec.* 11  
wife kone (*c*)  
will (*vb*) vil *sec.* 29  
will vilje (*c*)  
win (*vb*) vinne (*irreg.*)  
Chapter 9, page 121  
wind vind (*c*)  
window vindu (*n*)  
windy: it's windy det blåser  
wine vin (*c*)  
winter vinter (*c*)  
wipe (*vb*) tørke (av)  
wish (*vb*) ønske  
with med, sammen med  
within innen, inni  
without uten  
woman kvinne (*c*)  
wonder (*vb*) undre seg *sec.* 42  
wonderful vidunderlig  
wood skog, ved (*c*)  
wooden tre-  
work (*vb*) arbeide  
work arbeid (*n*)  
world verden (*c*)  
worry (about) bry seg (om),  
bekymre seg (om) *sec.* 42  
worth verd(t)  
write skrive (*irreg.*) *secs* 22, 28  
wrong feilaktig, gal  
be wrong ta feil  
wrong with galt med  
year år (*n*)  
yellow gul  
yes ja  
yesterday i går  
young ung  
your din, Deres, deres *sec.* 15  
yours din, Deres, deres, *sec.* 16

## Norwegian-English

Although the following is not an exhaustive list of words found in the book, it will be helpful for quick reference. Numbers against some entries indicate sections where important points are explained. The list follows Norwegian alphabetical order: A-Z, Æ, Ø, Å.

|                                  |                                       |
|----------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| <b>adjø</b> goodbye              | <b>arbeide</b> work                   |
| <b>aften</b> (c) evening         | <b>arm</b> (c) arm                    |
| <b>aftensmat</b> (c) supper      | <b>arr</b> (n) scar                   |
| <b>ake</b> sledge                | <b>arrangere</b> arrange              |
| <b>akkurat</b> just              | <b>atferd</b> (c) behaviour           |
| <b>aksje</b> (c) share           | <b>atskillig</b> a lot                |
| <b>alder</b> (c) age             | <b>av</b> of, by                      |
| <b>aldri</b> never               | <b>avhenge av</b> depend on           |
| <b>all</b> all                   | <b>avis</b> (c) newspaper             |
| <b>alle</b> everybody, everyone  | <b>avslutte</b> finish                |
| <b>allerede</b> already          |                                       |
| <b>alltid</b> always             | <b>bad</b> (n) bathroom               |
| <b>alminnelig</b> general        | <b>bade</b> swim                      |
| <b>alt</b> all, everything       | <b>badedrakt</b> (c) swimsuit         |
| <b>altfor</b> far too            | <b>badstue</b> (c) sauna              |
| <b>alvorlig</b> serious          | <b>bagasje</b> (c) luggage            |
| <b>Amerika</b> America           | <b>bak</b> behind                     |
| <b>amerikaner</b> (c) American   | <b>bakover</b> backwards              |
| <b>amerikansk</b> American       | <b>bank</b> (c) bank                  |
| <b>anbefale</b> recommend        | <b>banke</b> knock                    |
| <b>angre</b> regret              | <b>bankran</b> (n) bank robbery       |
| <b>ankomme til</b> arrive at     | <b>bar</b> (c) bar                    |
| <b>anledning</b> (c) opportunity | <b>bare</b> only, just                |
| <b>annen</b> other               | <b>barn</b> (c) child                 |
| <b>ansikt</b> (n) face           | <b>be</b> (bad, bedt) invite, request |
| <b>anstrengelse</b> (c) effort   | <b>bedre</b> better                   |
| <b>ansvar</b> (n) responsibility | <b>bedrøvet</b> sorry                 |
| <b>antall</b> (n) number         | <b>begeistring</b> (c) enthusiasm     |
| <b>arbeid</b> (n) work, job      | <b>begge</b> both                     |

|   |                                       |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| <b>begynne</b> begin, start                       | <b>bonde</b> (c) farmer               |
| <b>begynnelse</b> (c) beginning                   | <b>bondegård</b> (c) farm             |
| <b>behage</b> please                              | <b>bord</b> (n) table                 |
| <b>behagelig</b> comfortable                      | <b>bort, borte</b> away               |
| <b>bekymre seg (om)</b> worry (about)             | <b>bortenfor</b> beyond               |
| <b>Belgia</b> Belgium                             | <b>bra</b> well, fine                 |
| <b>belgier</b> (c) Belgian                        | <b>ha det bra</b> to feel well        |
| <b>belgisk</b> Belgian                            | <b>bratt</b> steep                    |
| <b>ben</b> (n) leg                                | <b>bre</b> (c) glacier                |
| <b>berømt</b> famous                              | <b>brekke (brakk, brukket)</b> break  |
| <b>beskytte</b> protect                           | <b>brenne</b> burn                    |
| <b>bestemme</b> decide                            | <b>brensel</b> (n) fuel               |
| <b>bestemmelsessted</b> (n) destination           | <b>brev</b> (n) letter                |
| <b>bestille</b> book, order                       | <b>briller</b> (cpl) spectacles       |
| <b>besøke</b> visit                               | <b>bringe (brakte, brakt)</b> bring   |
| <b>besøkende</b> (c) visitor                      | <b>britisk</b> British                |
| <b>betale</b> pay                                 | <b>bror</b> (c) brother               |
| <b>betingelser</b> (cpl) terms                    | <b>bruke</b> use, wear, spend (money) |
| <b>betydelig</b> considerable                     | <b>brun</b> brown                     |
| <b>bibliotek</b> (n) library                      | <b>bry</b> (n) trouble                |
| <b>bil</b> (c) car                                | <b>bry seg (om)</b> worry (about)     |
| <b>bilde</b> (n) picture                          | <b>brød</b> (n) bread, loaf of bread  |
| <b>bilfører</b> (c) car driver                    | <b>brå</b> sudden                     |
| <b>billett</b> (c) ticket                         | <b>bråk</b> (n) noise                 |
| <b>bjørn</b> (c) bear                             | <b>bukk</b> (n) bow                   |
| <b>blandt</b> among                               | <b>bukser</b> (cpl) trousers          |
| <b>bli (ble, blitt)</b> become, get, stay, remain | <b>burde</b> ought to                 |
| <b>bli frisk</b> recover                          | <b>buss</b> (c) bus                   |
| <b>bli kvitt</b> get rid of                       | <b>butikk</b> (c) shop                |
| <b>bli med</b> join                               | <b>by</b> (c) city, town              |
| <b>blomst</b> (c) flower                          | <b>bygd</b> (f) rural district        |
| <b>bluse</b> (c) blouse                           | <b>bygge</b> build                    |
| <b>blø</b> bleed                                  | <b>bygning</b> (c) building           |
| <b>blå</b> blue                                   | <b>bære (bar, båret)</b> carry        |
| <b>blåse</b> blow                                 | <b>bør</b> ought to                   |
| <b>det blåser</b> it's windy                      | <b>bøye</b> bend                      |
| <b>bo</b> stay, live                              | <b>bøye seg</b> bend down             |
| <b>boblejakke</b> (c) quilted anorak              | <b>både ... og</b> both ... and       |
| <b>bok</b> (c) book                               | <b>bånd</b> (n) ribbon, tape          |
|   | <b>båt</b> (c) boat                   |



Canada Canada

da then; when

dag (c) day

daglig daily

dame (c) lady

Danmark Denmark

danse dance

dato (c) date

datter (c) daughter

De you (*sing. formal*)

de secs 3, 7, 13 they; the; those

deg you (*sing. informal*)

deilig lovely

dekk (n) deck

dekke cover

del (c) part

delta (*deltok, deltatt*) take  
part

dem them

Dem you (*sing. formal*)

den secs 3, 7, 13 it; the; that

denne this

deprimert depressed

der there

dere you (*pl. informal*)

Dere you (*pl. formal*)

deres their, theirs

Deres your, yours

derpå then

dessverre I'm sorry to say

det secs 3, 7, 13 it; the; that

dette this

din your, yours (*sing. informal*)

disse these

dit there

ditt your, yours (*sing. informal*)

doktor (c) doctor

dom (c) judgement

doven lazy

dra (*drog, dradd*) go

dra på fisketur go fishing

drepe kill

dress (c) suit

drikke (*drakk, drukket*) drink

drosje (c) taxi

drøm (c) dream

du you (*sing. informal*)

dukke opp appear

dum foolish, silly

dusj (c) shower

dyr expensive

dårlig bad, badly

dø (*døde, dødd*) die

dør (c) door

egen own

eie own

eier (c) owner

ekorn (n) squirrel

eksempel (n) example

ekspeditør (c) shop assistant

ekstra extra

ektemann (c) husband

eller or

ellers otherwise

elske love

en a, an

enda although; still

enda en another

ende (c) end

ende end

endog even

eng (f) meadow

engel (c) angel

engelsk English

England England

enhver everybody,

everyone; each

enn than

ennå still, yet (*adv*)

enten ... eller either ... or

entré (c) entry

entrédør (c) front door

enveiskjøring (c) one-way  
traffic

eple (n) apple

erfaring (c) experience

erte tease

et a, an

etter after

ettermiddag (c) afternoon

etterpå afterwards

ettersom as

Europa Europe

europæer (c) European

europæisk European

eventyr (n) fairy tale

fabrikant (c) manufacturer

fabrikk (c) factory

falle (*falt, falt*) fall

familie (c) family

fange catch

far (c) father

farge (c) colour

farlig dangerous

fart (c) speed

farvel goodbye

fattig poor

feil (c) mistake

feilaktig wrong

feire celebrate

ferdig ready, finished

ferie (c) holiday

fersk fresh

fetter (c) male cousin

fin(t) fine, nice

finne (*fant, funnet*) find

firma (n) firm

fisk (c) fish

fiske (n) fishing

fiskerbåt (c) fishing boat

fisking (c) fishing

fjell (n) mountain

fjern far-off

fjernsyn (n) television

flagg (n) flag

flaske (c) bottle

flere several; more

fly (n) aeroplane

fly(ge) (*fløy, fløyet*) fly

flyplass (c) airport

flå skin

for for; too

for ... siden ago

for mye too much

for å in order to

foran in front of

forandre (*seg*) change

forberede prepare

forbli (*forble, forblitt*) remain

fordi because

forebygge prevent

foreldre (*cpl*) parents

forente stater, De United  
States

foretrekke (*foretrakk,*  
*foretrukket*) prefer

forferdelig terrible

forhånd: på forhånd in  
advance

forkjølelse (c) cold

forkjølet: være f. to have  
a cold

forlate (*forlot, forlatt*) leave

forlovet engaged

form (c) shape

formann (c) chairman

fornøyd pleased, content

forresten besides, by the way

forretning (c) business

forrett (c) starter

forsikre insure

forsikringsselskap (n)  
insurance company

forsinket late

forslag (n) proposal

forsove seg oversleep  
 forstå (forstod, forstått)  
     understand  
 fort fast, quickly  
 fortelle (fortalte, fortalt) tell  
 fortsette (fortsatte, fortsatt) go  
     on, keep on  
 forvente expect  
 foss (c) waterfall  
 fotballkamp (c) football match  
 fotgjenger (c) pedestrian  
 fottur (c) walking tour, walk  
 fra from  
 frakk (c) overcoat  
 Frankrike France  
 fransk French  
 fred (c) peace  
 fremover forward  
 fri free  
 frisk fresh, fit  
 frist (c) term  
 frokost (c) breakfast  
 fru Mrs  
 frukt (c) fruit  
 fryse (frøs, frosset) freeze  
 fugl (c) bird  
 full (av) full (of)  
 fullstendig complete(ly)  
 fylle fill  
 få few  
 få (fikk, fått) get  
 fødsels gave (c) birthday  
     present  
 føle feel  
 følge go with, follow  
 føll (n) foal  
 før before  
 først first  
  
 gaffel (c) fork  
 gal crazy, mad, wrong  
 galt med wrong with

gammel old  
 gang (c) time  
     en annen gang some  
     other time  
     en gang once  
     med én gang at once  
 ganske quite, fairly  
 gasje (c) salary  
 gate (c) street  
 geit (f) goat  
 generell general  
 genser (c) sweater  
 gi (gav, gitt) give  
 gifte seg (med) marry  
 gjeld (c) debt  
 gjelde apply to  
 gjemme (seg) hide  
 gjennom through  
 gjennomføre go through with  
 gjensyn reunion  
     På gjensyn! See you later!  
 gjerde (n) fence  
 gjerne readily  
     jeg vil gjerne ha I'd like  
 gjest (c) guest, visitor  
 gjøre (gjorde, gjort) do, make  
 gjøre innkjøp shop (vb)  
 glad happy  
 glass (n) glass  
 glede pleasure  
 glede seg over rejoice at, enjoy  
 glede seg til look forward to  
 glemme forget  
 gløgg quick-witted  
 god good, nice  
 godt well  
 godta (godtok, godtatt) accept  
 godter (cpl) sweets  
 Golfstrømmen Gulf Stream  
 grad (c) degree  
 gratulere congratulate  
 grense (c) border

grunn (c) reason  
 grønn green  
 grønnsak (c) vegetable  
 gråte (gråt, grått) cry  
 gul yellow  
 gull (n) gold  
 gulv (n) floor  
 gutt (c) boy  
 gå (gikk, gått) walk, go, leave  
 gå en tur go for a walk  
 gå glipp av miss  
 gå inn enter  
 gå over cross  
 gå på ski  
 gå på skøyter skate  
 gå seg vill get lost

ha (hadde, hatt) have  
 ha rett be right  
 hage (c) garden  
 hake (c) chin  
 halte limp  
 halv half  
 ham him  
 han he  
 handelsflåte (c) merchant fleet  
 handle shop  
 hans his  
 hard hard  
 hatt (c) hat  
 hav (n) sea  
 havn (c) port  
 hel whole; all  
 heldig lucky  
 heldigvis fortunately  
 helg (c) weekend  
 hell (n) luck  
 Hellas Greece  
 helle pour  
 helse (c) health  
 helt completely  
 hende occur, happen

henge (hang, hengt) hang  
 henne her  
 hennes her, hers  
 hensikt (c) motive  
 hente fetch, collect  
 her here  
 herr Mr  
 hete (het, hett) be called  
 heve cash  
 heve seg tower  
 hilsen (c) greeting  
 hilsener (cpl) regards  
 himmel (c) sky  
 hit here  
 hjelpe (hjalp, hjulpet) help  
 hjem home  
 hjemme at home  
 hjerte (n) heart  
 hjul (n) wheel  
 hjørne (n) corner  
 hode (n) head  
 hodepine (c) headache  
 hoppe jump  
 hotell (n) hotel  
 hovedrett (c) main dish  
 hull (n) hole  
 hun she  
 hund (c) dog  
 hus (n) house  
 huske remember  
 hva what  
 hva med what about  
 hva som enn whatever  
 hvem who, whom  
 hver every, each  
 hverandre each other  
 hvile seg rest  
 hvilken which  
 hvis if  
 hvit white  
 hvor where  
 hvor mange how many



hvor mye how much  
hvordan how  
hvordan står det til? how  
are you?  
hvorfor why  
hygge seg have a good time  
hyggelig pleasant, nice  
hytte (f) hut  
høre hear  
høst (c) autumn  
høy high, tall  
høyde height  
være på høyde med  
keep up with  
høyre right  
høyt loud  
hånd (c) hand  
håpe hope  
hår (n) hair

i in  
i dag today  
i det minste at least  
i fjor last year  
i form fit  
i går yesterday  
i morgen tomorrow  
i morgen tidlig tomorrow  
morning  
i morges this morning  
i natt last night  
i søvn asleep  
i utlandet abroad  
idé (c) idea  
idet as  
idrett (c) sport  
igjen again  
ikke not  
ikke lenger no longer  
ikke mer no more  
ikke noe nothing  
ikke noen no

ingen no one, none, no  
ingenting nothing  
inn in  
innbydelse (c) invitation  
inne in, inside  
innen within, before  
innenfor inside  
innenlands inland  
inngang (c) entrance  
inni within  
innland (n) inland  
innløse cash  
innrømme admit  
innse (innså, innsett) realise  
inntil till, until  
interessert (i) interested (in)  
Irland Ireland  
irsk Irish  
is (c) ice  
isbjørn (c) polar bear  
iskrem (c) ice cream  
Italia Italy  
italiener (c) Italian  
italiensk Italian  
ivrig eager

ja yes  
Japan Japan  
japansk Japanese  
javel certainly  
jeg I  
jeg vil ( gjerne ) ha I'd like  
jente (f) girl  
jernbanestasjon (c) railway  
station  
jobb (c) job  
jord (c) earth  
jul (c) Christmas

kafé (c) café  
kaffe (c) coffee  
kake (c) cake

kald cold  
kalle call  
kan (irreg.) can, may  
kanadier (c) Canadian  
kanadisk Canadian  
kanskje perhaps  
kart (n) map  
kasse (c) cash desk  
kaste throw  
kelner (c) waiter  
Kina China  
kino (n) cinema  
kirke (c) church  
kjempe fight  
kjenne know  
kjedelig boring  
kjole (c) dress  
kjær dear  
kjæreste (c) boyfriend/  
girlfriend  
kjærlighet (c) love  
kjøkken (n) kitchen  
kjøleskap (n) fridge  
kjøpe buy  
kjøpmann (c) shopkeeper  
kjøre drive  
kjøtt (n) meat  
klage (over, på) complain (of)  
klar distinct  
klare seg do, be enough  
klasse (c) class  
kle (på seg) dress  
klippe (c) rock  
klokke (c) watch  
klosset clumsy  
klynge (c) cluster  
klynge seg cling  
klær (cpl) clothes  
knappt hardly  
kne (n) knee  
kniv (c) knife  
koffert (c) suitcase

koke boil  
kolonialhandel (c) grocery  
komme (kom, kommet) come  
komme (frem) (til) arrive (at)  
det kommer på it comes to  
kone (c) wife  
konge (c) king  
konkurranse (c) competition  
kontor (n) office  
konvolutt (c) envelope  
kopp (c) cup  
kort (n) postcard  
kort short  
koste cost  
kraftig hard, strong  
kredittkort (n) credit card  
kreve demand  
krig (c) war  
krysse cross  
krype (krøp, krøpet) crawl  
ku (f) cow  
kunde (c) customer  
kunne to be able  
kurs (n) course  
kusine (c) female cousin  
kveld (c) evening, night  
kvinne (c) woman  
kyst (c) coast

la (lot, latt) let  
lag (c) team  
lage make, prepare, produce  
lager (n) storehouse, ware-  
house  
laks (c) salmon  
lampe (c) lamp  
lang long  
langs along  
langsom slow  
langt far  
lastebil (c) lorry  
lege (c) doctor

**legge (la, lagt)** put  
**legge på seg** put on weight  
**legge seg** go to bed  
**lei** sorry  
**leke** play  
**lekse (c)** lesson  
**lekser (cpl)** homework  
**leksjon (c)** lesson  
**lenge** for a long time  
**lese** read  
**lesse** load  
**letne** lighten  
**lett** easy, light; readily  
**leve** live  
**lide (led, lidt) (av)** suffer (from)  
**ligge (lå, ligget)** lie, be situated  
**ligne** resemble, be like  
**like** like, love, enjoy  
**like** just (as)  
**likså** just as  
**likså ... som** as ... as  
**lite, liten** small, little  
**litt** a little  
**litt etter litt** gradually  
**liv (n)** life  
**lommebok (c)** wallet  
**lommelærke (n)** handkerchief  
**love** promise  
**luft (c)** air  
**lukke** close, shut  
**lukt (c)** smell  
**lunsj (c)** lunch  
**lure** wonder  
**lyd (c)** noise  
**lykke (n)** luck  
**lykkelig** happy  
**lykkes** succeed  
**lykkønske** congratulate  
**lys** bright, light, fair

**lyst (c)** desire  
**har De lyst til** would you like  
**lytte (til)** listen (to)  
**lære** learn  
**lærer (c)** teacher  
**løpe (løp, løpt)** run  
**låse** lock  
  
**male** paint  
**mange** *sec. 18B* lots of, many, plenty  
**mann (c)** man, husband  
**mannskap (n)** team  
**marked (n)** market  
**mat (c)** food  
**med** with  
**med én gang** at once  
**med mindre** unless  
**meg** me  
**meget** very; much  
**melk (c)** milk  
**mellom** between  
**men** but  
**mene** mean  
**menneske (n)** person  
**mens** while  
**mer** more  
**merke** notice  
**merkelig** peculiar  
**middag** midday; dinner  
**middelaldrende** middle-aged  
**midnatt** midnight  
**midt i** in the middle of  
**midt iblant** amid  
**mild** mild  
**min** my, mine  
**mindre** less  
**mine** my, mine  
**minst** at least, least  
**minutt (n)** minute  
**mistanke (c)** suspicion

**miste** lose  
**mitt** my, mine  
**moderne** fashionable, modern  
**modig** brave  
**mor (c)** mother  
**morgen (c)** morning  
**moro (c)** fun  
**morsom** funny  
**mot** against, towards  
**motta (mottok, mottalt)** accept  
**mulig** possible  
**mulighet (c)** possibility  
**munter** merry  
**mur (c)** wall  
**museum (n)** museum  
**mye** plenty, a lot, much  
**møte (n)** meeting  
**møte** meet  
**må** must  
**måltid (n)** meal  
**måned (c)** month  
**måtte** have to (must)

**nabo (c)** neighbour  
**natt** night  
**nattklubb (c)** nightclub  
**naturligvis** naturally  
**navn (n)** name  
**ned, nede** down  
**nederlag (n)** defeat  
**Nederland** Netherlands  
**nedover** downwards  
**nedtrykt** depressed  
**nei** no  
**nekte** refuse  
**neppe** hardly  
**nese (n)** nose  
**neste** next  
**nettopp** just  
**nevne** mention  
**niese (c)** niece  
**noe** something, anything

**noen** any, some, anyone, someone  
**nok** enough  
**nokså** fairly, quite, rather  
**nord** north  
**nordavind (c)** north wind  
**Nordkapp** North Cape  
**nordmann (c)** Norwegian  
**Norge** Norway  
**norsk** Norwegian  
**nummer (n)** number  
**ny** new  
**nydelig** delicious  
**nylig** recently  
**nyte** enjoy  
**nær** near  
**nødvendig** necessary  
**nøkkel (c)** key  
**nøle** hesitate  
**nå** now  
**nå** reach  
**når** when, whenever

**ofte** often  
**og** and  
**også** also, too  
**om** about, in (time)  
**om** if, whether  
**omsorg (c)** care  
**omtrent** about  
**onkel (c)** uncle  
**opera (c)** opera  
**opp** up  
**oppdage** discover  
**oppdragelse (c)** education  
**oppe** up  
**oppførsel (c)** behaviour  
**oppgi (oppgav, oppgitt)** give up  
**opphold (n)** stay  
**opplevelse (c)** experience  
**opplysninger (cpl)** information

**oppmerksomt** attentively  
**oppover** upwards  
**opptatt** busy  
**ordne** arrange  
**organisere** organise  
**oss** us  
**ost** (c) cheese  
**over** above, over  
**overfylt** overcrowded  
**overleve** survive  
**overraske** surprise  
**overraskelse** (c) surprise  
**oversettelse** (c) translation

**pakke** pack  
**panne** (c) forehead  
**par** (n) couple  
**paraply** (c) umbrella  
**park** (c) park  
**pass** (n) passport  
**passe** fit, be suitable  
**passe på** to keep an eye on  
**pels** (c) fur  
**pen** pretty, nice  
**penger** (cpl) money  
**pike** (c) girl  
**plan** (c) plan  
**planlegge** (planla, planlagt)  
plan  
**plutselig** sudden(ly)  
**poeng** (n) point  
**Polen** Poland  
**politi** (n) police  
**politiker** (c) politician  
**populær** popular  
**pose** (c) bag  
**postkontor** (n) post office  
**postkort** (n) postcard  
**potet** (c) potato  
**praktfull** magnificent  
**pris** (c) price  
**produsere** produce

**prøve** try  
**pyntelig** properly  
**pølse** (c) sausage  
**på** on, at  
**på denne tiden** by this time  
**pålegg** (n) topping, filling  
**påske** (c) Easter

**rapportere** report  
**rar** funny  
**rask** quick  
**ratt** (n) steering wheel  
**reagere** react  
**redd** (for) afraid (of)  
**regne** rain; count, calculate  
**regne med** count on, reckon  
with  
**regnfrakk** (c) raincoat  
**regning** (c) bill  
**regnskur** (c) rainshower  
**reinsdyr** (n) reindeer  
**reise** (c) trip, journey  
**reise** go, travel, leave  
**reisebyrå** (c) travel agency  
**reisesejakk** (c) traveller's  
cheque  
**reisesyke** (c) travel sickness  
**rekke** (rakte, rakt) reach  
**renne** (rant, rent) run  
**rense** clean  
**reparasjon** (c) repair  
**reparere** repair  
**reportasje** (c) report  
**respektere** respect  
**rest** (c) rest  
**restaurant** (c) restaurant  
**rett** right  
**ha rett** be right  
**rett frem** straight on  
**ribbe** pluck  
**rik** rich  
**riktig** correct, right

**rimelig** reasonable, fair  
**ro** (c) quiet  
**rom** room  
**rund(t)** round  
**rød** red  
**rø(y)ke** smoke  
**rørlegger** (c) plumber  
**råd** (n) advice; means  
**ha råd til** be able to afford

**sak** (c) cause  
**saltvannsfisk** (c) salt-water fish  
**same** (c) Lapp  
**samle** collect  
**sammen** together  
**sammen med** with  
**samtale** (c) conversation  
**sandwich** (c) sandwich  
**sannhet** (c) truth  
**sannsynlig** probable  
**sannsynnligvis** probably  
**sans** (c) sense  
**sant** true  
**sant å si** to tell the truth  
**savne** miss  
**se** (så, sett) see  
**se etter** look for  
**se på** look at, watch  
**se ut** (som) seem, look (like)  
**seg** himself, herself, itself,  
oneself, themselves  
**seier** (c) victory  
**seilbåt** (c) sailing boat  
**seile** sail  
**sel** (c) seal  
**selge** (solgte, solgt) sell  
**selskap** (n) party  
**selv** even  
**selv** (my)self  
**selv om** even if  
**selvfølgelig** of course  
**sen** late

**sende** send  
**seng** (c) bed  
**senke** lower  
**servere** serve  
**sete** (n) seat  
**sette** (satte, satt) put  
**sette seg** sit down  
**si** (sa, sagt) say  
**side** (c) side  
**siden** since  
**for ... siden** ago  
**sikker** sure, certain  
**sikt** (c) sight, term  
**sin, sine** his (own), her (own),  
their (own)  
**sist** last  
**sitt** his (own), her (own),  
their (own)  
**sitte** (satt, sittet) sit  
**sjef** (c) boss  
**sjekk** (c) cheque  
**sjelden** seldom  
**sjø** (c) sea  
**sjøreise** (c) cruise  
**skade** (c) damage  
**skade hurt**, injure  
**skal** shall  
**skalldyr** (n) shellfish  
**skam** (c) shame  
**skamfull** ashamed  
**skandinavisk** Scandinavian  
**skap** (n) cupboard  
**skifte** change  
**skikk** (c) custom  
**skille seg** divorce  
**skinke** (c) ham  
**skinkerull** (c) luncheon meat  
**skip** (n) ship  
**skipsfart** (c) shipping  
**skive** (c) slice  
**skje** (c) spoon  
**skjegg** (n) beard

skjelle ut curse  
skjerf (n) scarf  
skjorte (c) shirt  
skjære (skar, skåret) cut  
skjønt although  
skjørt (n) skirt  
sko (c) shoe  
skog (c) forest, wood  
skole (c) school  
skotsk Scottish  
Skottland Scotland  
skremme frighten  
skrive (skrev, skrevet) write  
skru på turn on  
skuffe disappoint  
sky (c) cloud  
skyld (c) blame  
skylle pour  
skynde (seg) hurry  
Skål! Cheers!  
slag (n) kind  
  hva slags what kind of  
slanke seg slim  
slappe av relax  
slektning (c) relation  
slik so, such  
slips tie  
slott (n) palace  
slutt (c) end  
slutt over  
slutte end  
slutte seg til join  
slør (n) veil  
slå (slo, slått) strike  
slå av switch off  
smake taste  
smart smart  
smile smile  
smørbrød (n) open sandwich  
snakke speak, talk  
snart soon  
sne (c) snow

snill kind  
snillhet (c) kindness  
snu turn  
snø (c) snow  
sol (c) sun  
som who, whom, which  
som like  
som om as if  
sommer (c) summer  
sort black  
sove (sov, sovett) sleep  
soveværelse (n) bedroom  
Spania Spain  
spansk Spanish  
spasere go for a walk  
spasertur (c) walking tour,  
  walk  
spent curious  
sperret barred  
spise eat  
spille play  
spiss pointed  
sportsklær (cpl) sportswear  
språk (n) language  
spørre (spurte, spurt) (etter)  
  ask (for)  
spørsmål (n) question  
stakkars poor  
stasjon (c) station  
stanse stop  
sted (n) place  
  av sted away  
stein (c) stone  
steke fry  
sten (c) stone  
sterk strong  
stille still  
stille spørsmål ask questions  
stjele (stjal, stjålet) steal  
stol (c) chair  
stole på trust  
stolt proud

stopp (n) stop  
stor big, large  
Storbritannia (Great) Britain  
storlagen magnificent  
straks immediately  
streik (c) strike  
strev (n) trouble  
strømpebukser (cpl) tights  
studere study  
stue (c) sitting room  
stund (c) while  
stykke (n) piece  
støtte support  
stå (stod, stått) stand  
stå opp get up  
sukker (n) sugar  
sulten hungry  
supermarked (n)  
  supermarket  
suppe (c) soup  
svar (n) answer  
svare answer  
svart black  
Sveits Switzerland  
Sverige Sweden  
svigerinne (c) sister-in-law  
svinekotelett (c) pork chop  
svoger (c) brother-in-law  
svært very  
svømme swim  
syk ill  
sykehus (n) hospital  
syltetøy (n) jam  
synes seem, think  
synke decrease  
særlig particularly  
sølv (n) silver  
sønn (c) son  
sør (for) south (of)  
sørge (over) mourn  
søskenbarn (n) cousin  
søster (c) sister

søt sweet, nice  
søtsaker (cpl) sweets  
søvn (n) sleep  
så so; then  
så ... som sec. 44 as ... as  
så mye that much  
så snart som as soon as  
så å si so to speak  
  
ta (tok, tatt) take, catch  
ta feil be wrong  
ta motet fra discourage  
ta seg av take care of  
ta seg sammen pull oneself  
  together  
tak (n) ceiling  
takk! thank you!  
  mange takk thank you  
  very much  
takket være thanks to  
tall (n) number  
tanke (c) thought  
tann (c) tooth  
tante (c) aunt  
tape lose  
tapper brave  
te (c) tea  
teater (n) theatre  
telefon (c) telephone  
telle count  
temmelig fairly, quite, rather  
tenke think  
teppe (n) carpet  
tid (c) time, age  
tidlig early  
  i morgen tidlig tomorrow  
  morning  
til till, until, to  
til høyre on/to the right  
til slutt finally, at last  
til venstre on/to the left  
tilbake back

**tilbringe (tilbrakte, tilbrakt)**  
spend (time)  
**tilbud (n)** proposal  
**tilfreds** content  
**tilgi (tilgav, tilgitt)** forgive  
**tilhøre** belong to  
**tilkalle** call  
**time (c)** hour  
**tine** thaw  
**tog (n)** train  
**tom** empty  
**topp (c)** summit  
**torg (n)** square, market  
**torsk (c)** cod  
**tosk (c)** fool  
**trapp (c)** staircase  
**trappeoppgang (c)** stairway  
**travel** busy  
**jeg har det travelt**  
I'm in a hurry  
**tre-** wooden  
**tre (n)** tree  
**treffe (traff, truffet)** meet  
**trekke (trakk, trukket)** pull  
**trener (c)** coach  
**treng** need  
**trett** tired  
**trist** sad  
**trives** thrive  
**tro** believe, think  
**trofast** faithful  
**tung** heavy  
**tvile** doubt  
**tydelig** distinct  
**tykk** thick  
**tynn** thin  
**tysk** German  
**Tyskland** Germany  
**tø** thaw  
**tørke (av)** wipe  
**tåket** foggy  
**tåpelig** silly

**uforglemmelig** unforgettable  
**uheldigvis** unfortunately  
**uhell (n)** accident  
**uke (c)** week  
**ulykke (c)** accident  
**umulig** impossible  
**umåtelig** immensely  
**under** during, under  
**underholdende** entertaining  
**undertøye (c)** vest  
**undertøy (n)** underwear  
**undervisning (c)** education  
**undre seg** wonder  
**ung** young  
**unngå (unngikk, unngått)**  
prevent, avoid  
**unnskyld (meg)** excuse me  
**unnskyld** excuse  
**ur (n)** watch  
**ut, ute** out  
**uten** without  
**utenfor** outside  
**utland** foreign parts  
**i utlandet** abroad  
**til utlandet** abroad  
**utlending (c)** foreigner  
**utmerket** excellent  
**uttrykke** express  
**vakker** pretty, beautiful  
**valg (n)** choice, election  
**valisisk** Welsh  
**vanlig** ordinary, usual  
**vanligvis** usually  
**vann (n)** water, lake  
**vanskelig** difficult, hard  
**vanskelighet (c)** difficulty  
**vant til** used to  
**varebil (c)** van  
**varemagasin (n)** department  
store  
**varer (cpl)** goods

**varm** warm, hot  
**varme (c)** heat  
**vaske (seg)** wash  
**ved (c)** wood  
**ved** by, at  
**ved siden av** next to  
**vegg (c)** wall  
**vei (c)** road, way  
**veikryss (n)** crossroads  
**vekke** wake up  
**vel** well  
**velkommen** welcome  
**vende** turn  
**vende tilbake** go back,  
return  
**venn (c)** friend  
**vennlig** friendly, kind  
**venstre** left  
**vente** expect  
**vente (på)** wait (for)  
**verd(t)** worth  
**verden (c)** world  
**verken ... eller** neither ... nor  
**vertinne (c)** hostess  
**veske (c)** handbag, bag  
**vettskremt** terrified  
**vi** we  
**vidunderlig** wonderful  
**viktig** important  
**vil** will  
**vil ha** want(s)  
**vilje (c)** will  
**ville** want (to)  
**ville nødig** would rather not  
**vin (c)** wine  
**vind (c)** wind

**vindu (n)** window  
**vinne (vant, vunnet)** win  
**vinter (c)** winter  
**virkelig** indeed, really  
**vise** show  
**vise seg** appear  
**viss** certain  
**vite (vet, visste, visst)** know  
**vokse** grow  
**vott (c)** mitten  
**vri** twist  
**vær (n)** weather  
**vær så god!** can I help you?  
**vær så snill/god** please  
**være (er, var, vært)** be  
**værelse (n)** room  
**våkne** wake up  
**vår (c)** spring  
**vår** our, ours  
**våt** wet  
**yrke (n)** profession  
**øke** increase  
**øl (n)** beer  
**ønske** want, wish  
**øvelse (c)** exercise  
**øye (n)** eye  
**øyeblikk (n)** moment  
**å** to  
**åpen** open  
**åpne** open  
**år (n)** year  
**årsak (c)** reason, cause  
**årstid (c)** season



# Index

The numbers refer to section headings, unless pages are specified

- A/a (en/et) 1**  
 Adjectives 6, 7, 17, 18  
 comparison of 18  
 demonstrative 13  
 -e form of 7, 13, 15  
 possessive 15  
 Adverbs 23, 30, 31  
 comparison of 30  
 position of 24  
 Articles 1, 2, 7
- 'To be' (**være**) 4, 22, 27, 35  
**Burde/bør** ('should',  
 'ought to') 29
- 'Can' (**kan**) 29  
 Colloquial speech 66  
 Comparison 18, 30, 44  
 Compound words 5, 56  
 Conditional tense 48  
 Congratulations 67  
 Conjunctions 45, 46, 49, 50, 58  
 Consonants page 12, *Appendix*  
 Countries 51  
 prepositions with 52
- Dates 33  
 Days 33  
 Demonstratives 13, 61  
**Det** ('it') 3, 40, 62  
**Det** ('that') 13, 61  
**Det** ('the') 1, 2, 7
- Det er** ('There is') 37
- En/et** ('a/an') 1
- For å** ('in order to') 60  
 Future tense 41
- Gender 1  
 Genitive 5  
 Greetings 67
- 'To have' (**ha**) 4, 21, 28, 35
- Imitated pronunciation page 9  
 Imperative 10  
 'In order to' (**for å**) 60  
 Indefinite pronouns 38  
 Interrogatives 9, 11  
 'It' (**det**) 3, 40, 62
- Kan** ('can', 'may') 29
- Main clauses 45  
 Modal verbs 29, 41  
 Months 33  
 'Must' (**må**) 29
- Negatives  
 'not' (**ikke**) 9  
 other negatives 12
- Nouns  
 gender 1  
 plural of 2

- Numerals 14, 25, 39  
 cardinals 14, 25  
 ordinals 39
- Object forms of pronouns 19  
 'Ought to' (**bør**) 29
- Passive voice 53  
 Past participle 26, 65  
 Past tense 21, 22  
 Perfect tense 27, 28, 35  
 Personal pronouns 3, 19  
 Pluperfect tense 34, 35
- Possessive  
 adjectives 15  
 of nouns 5  
 pronouns 16
- Prepositions 36, 52, 57, 58, 64  
 followed by infinitive 64  
 with geographical names 52  
 i/på ('in'/'on') 52, 57  
 om ('about'/'for') 58
- Present tense 4, 8, 29  
 Present participle 55
- Pronouns  
 demonstrative 13, 61  
 indefinite 38  
 personal 3, 19  
 possessive 16  
 relative 43
- Pronunciation page 8
- Reflexive verbs 42  
 Relative pronouns 43
- Seasons 32  
 'Shall' (**skal**) 29  
 'Some/any' (**noen/noe**) 38  
 Spelling rules page 8, *Appendix*  
 Stress page 14  
 Subordinate clauses 46, 47, 48, 49  
 Superlatives 18, 30, 44  
 'That' 13, 61  
 'The' (-en/-et) 1 ('det') 7  
 'There is'/'there are' 37  
 'This' 13  
 Time 20, 59  
 'To' before an infinitive 8, 60
- Verbs  
 active verbs with passive  
 form 54  
 auxiliaries, modal 29, 41; see  
 also **ha, være**  
**ha** 4, 21, 28, 35  
 impersonal 40  
 modal auxiliaries 29, 41  
 passive voice 53, 54  
 preceded by prepositions 64  
 reflexive 42  
 spelling changes 21, *Appendix*  
 strong 22, 26, 27, 28  
**være** ('to be') 4, 22, 27, 35  
 weak 21, 26, 27, 28  
**Vil** ('will') 29  
 Vowels page 9, *Appendix*
- Weather 40  
 Word order 9, 24, 47

## Picture Credits:

Jacket: LESLIE GARLAND: top left, top centre, centre below and spine bottom, centre below right and back cover; ROBERT HARDING PICTURE LIBRARY: Kim Hart top right and bottom right above; Ghigo Roli left; Adam Woolfitt centre left and bottom right; HUTCHISON LIBRARY: John Eagan centre above right.